

## **REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA)**

*These regulations apply to students admitted to the BA curriculum in the academic year 2002-03 and thereafter.*

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

### **Definitions**

**A 1<sup>1</sup>** For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BA degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

'Major' means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 48 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, in the same disciplinary field, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

'Double major' means two majors, with each such major as defined above, where the two majors concerned may be offered by the same department or by two different departments.

'Minor' means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not fewer than 24 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, to be taken in the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum.

An 'academic year' comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence normally in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence normally in January and end in June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. A 'summer semester' may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters.

### **Admission to the BA degree**

**A 2** To be eligible for admission to the BA degree, candidates shall:

- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
- (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
- (c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

### **Length of Study**

**A 3** The curriculum for the BA degree shall require six semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than three academic years, and shall include examinations to be held at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to complete the curriculum in more than **four** academic years, which being the maximum period of registration.

**A 4** The number and length of written examinations shall be as laid down in the syllabuses. Dissertations, field-work, class tests, oral, aural and practical tests may also be prescribed. Coursework assessment shall be taken into account as prescribed in the syllabuses.

<sup>1</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG 1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

### **Selection of courses**

**A 5** Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Changes to the selection of courses may be made only during the first two weeks of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the first two weeks of the semester shall not normally be considered.

**A 6** Candidates in any semester shall select courses only after obtaining approval from the Heads of the Departments concerned, and the selection shall be subject to confirmation by the Board of the Faculty. Withdrawal beyond the two-week deadline will not be permitted, except for medical reasons approved by the Board of the Faculty, and the course concerned will be given a failed grade.

### **Curriculum requirements**

**A 7** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall

- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG 3 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula, and
- (b) take not fewer than 180 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

**A 8** Candidates shall not normally take fewer than 30, nor more than 36, credits in each semester, except for the last semester of study, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

**A 9** To complete the first and second semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall follow instruction and satisfy the examiners in 60 credits designated as First Year or Level 100 courses, including:

- (a) four 3-credit courses: Academic English for Arts Students; Chinese Language Enhancement; Information Technology; and one 3-credit course in Science and Technology studies for non-science students;

[Some candidates, e.g. those who are non-Cantonese speaking or have no knowledge of the language, may be exempted from attending the Chinese language enhancement course and permitted to substitute another 3-credit course for it. Candidates may be exempted from attending the Information Technology course on the basis of the results obtained from an aptitude test in IT, or by satisfying the examiners in an approved course which incorporates an IT element as specified in the syllabuses.]

- (b) at least 6 credits from a single department/programme/centre in each of any three out of the following four groupings:

Group 1 - American Studies, Chinese, English, European Studies, Japanese Studies, Language Centre  
 Group 2 - Geography, History  
 Group 3 - Comparative Literature, Linguistics, Philosophy  
 Group 4 - Fine Arts, Music; and

- (c) if necessary, additional courses to make up a total of 60 credits in the first and second semesters from:

- (i) any departments/programmes/centre listed in (b) above; and/or
- (ii) the following departments/school/programme:

- Buddhist Studies
- Cognitive Science
- Computer Science and Information Systems
- Economics and Finance
- Mathematics
- Physics
- Politics and Public Administration
- Psychology
- Social Work and Social Administration
- Sociology
- Statistics and Actuarial Science

provided that candidates shall not, within their normal study load of 60 credits in the first and second semesters, select more than 30 credits from any one department/programme/centre listed in (b) above, nor shall candidates select more than 6 credits from those offered by the departments/school listed in (c)(ii) above.

Candidates who are willing to take an additional study load shall be allowed to take up to 6 credits over and above the normal load of 30 credits in each of the first and second semesters.

**A 10** To complete the third to the sixth semesters of the curriculum, candidates shall normally follow instruction in a selection of courses which must include one major and which may include a second major or up to two minors, with the combination of courses for each major and minor being as prescribed in the syllabuses, and shall satisfy the examiners in coursework and in any examinations for 120 credits as selected in accordance with Regulation A11.

**A 11** Candidates shall select courses designated as Second Year or Level 200 courses in the third and fourth semesters of the curriculum and shall select courses designated as Third Year or Level 300 courses in the fifth and sixth semesters, except that candidates who have failed to attain 60 First Year or Level 100 credits by the end of their second semester of study or failed to attain 60 Second Year or Level 200 credits by the end of their fourth semester of study shall be allowed to make up the missing credits by including the outstanding credits in the two subsequent semesters of study, subject to the provisions of Regulation A16. Courses designated as Second/Third Year or Level 200/300 may be taken in the third to the sixth semesters. Each semester shall normally consist of 30 credits and shall include:

- (a) Professional English for Arts Students (3 credits) to be taken in either the third or the fourth semester; and 12 credits offered outside the Faculty of Arts for the purpose of inter-Faculty broadening; and

either

- (b) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in any one of the following departments/centre/programmes:

- American Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- English
- European Studies

- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Language Centre
- Linguistics
- Music
- Philosophy;

or

- (c) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major taken in one of the departments/programmes listed in (b) above, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in combinations of courses offered by the following departments/centre/school/programmes teaching in the Faculty of Arts:

- American Studies
- Buddhist Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- Computer Science and Information Systems
- Earth Sciences
- Economics and Finance
- English
- European Studies
- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Journalism and Media Studies Centre
- Language Centre
- Linguistics
- Mathematics
- Music
- Philosophy
- Physics
- Politics and Public Administration
- Psychology
- Social Work and Social Administration
- Sociology
- Statistics and Actuarial Science

A candidate's selection of major(s), minor(s) and of cross-departmental course combinations shall be made only with the approval of the Heads of the Departments/Centre/School concerned, and a candidate's choice shall normally be confined to those combinations which are possible under the published timetable. Candidates shall not be permitted to take, within their normal study load of 120 credits, more than 30 credits outside the Faculty or more than 12 credits from the Department of Social Work and Social Administration, except that a candidate taking a major in the Department of Philosophy or in one of the following majors shall be permitted to take 48 credits for a major from the departments/school/programme listed in Regulation A9(c)(ii) above: American Studies, History or Linguistics and Philosophy.

Candidates who wish to exceed the normal load of 30 credits in each of the third to the sixth semesters shall be allowed to take up to 6 additional credits in a course or courses from the departments/programmes listed in Regulation A9(b) in the major.

---

### **Assessment and grades**

**A 12** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of: coursework, written examinations or tests, continuous assessment of class performance, field work, research or project reports, or in any other manner as specified in the syllabuses. Only those satisfactorily completed courses will earn credits. Grades shall be awarded in accordance with UG 5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

**A 13** Written examinations or tests shall normally be held at the end of the semester in which it is taught unless otherwise provided for in the syllabuses. Candidates may be required to sit written examinations or tests for more than one course on any particular date.

**A 14** Courses in which a candidate is given an F grade shall be recorded on the transcript, together with the new grade obtained if the candidate chooses to repeat the failed course. Any failed grade(s) shall be included in calculating the Semester GPA and shall be taken into account for the purposes of determining eligibility for award of the BA degree, honours classification and whether a candidate be discontinued from studies in the Faculty.

**A 15** Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for upgrading purposes.

**A 16** Candidates shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty if they have:

- (a) failed to pass at least 18 credits in each of the first and second semesters or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of the second semester; or
- (b) failed to pass at least 24 credits in each of the third and fourth semesters or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of the fourth semester; or
- (c) failed to pass at least 24 credits in each of the fifth and sixth semesters or achieved a GPA of less than 1.00 at the end of the sixth semester; or
- (d) exceeded the maximum period of registration.

**A 17** Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present for any paper of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a re-examination in the paper to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate's absence from any examination. Any re-examination shall be part of that academic year's examinations, and the provisions made in these regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

---

### **Advanced standing**

**A 18** Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere in accordance with UG 2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. Advanced credits granted may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but shall not be included in the calculation of the Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

### **Degree classification**

**A 19** To be eligible for the award of the BA degree, candidates shall have:

- (a) satisfied the requirements in the UG3 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;
- (b) passed not fewer than 180 credits, comprising 60 credits of First Year or Level 100 courses, 60 credits of Second Year or Level 200 courses and 60 credits of Third Year or Level 300 courses; and
- (c) achieved a GPA of 1.00 or above.

**A 20** The BA degree shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its absolute discretion, taking into account the standard attained by candidates in the written examinations and in coursework, as well as other relevant factors. Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate's Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

## **REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA)**

*These regulations apply to students admitted to the BA curriculum before the academic year 2002-03.*

*(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)*

### **Definitions**

**A 1<sup>1</sup>** For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BA degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

'Major' means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not less than 48 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, in the same disciplinary field, to be taken in the second and third years of the curriculum.

'Double major' means two majors, with each such major as defined above, where the two majors concerned may be offered by the same department or by two different departments.

'Minor' means a combination of courses as specified in the syllabuses, accumulating not less than 24 credits except where otherwise provided for in the syllabuses, to be taken in the second and third years of the curriculum.

An 'academic year' comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence normally in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence normally in January and end in June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. A 'summer semester' may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters.

<sup>1</sup> This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG 1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

### **Admission to the BA degree**

**A 2** To be eligible for admission to the BA degree, candidates shall:

- (a) comply with the General Regulations;
  - (b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
  - (c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.
- 

### **Length of Study**

**A 3** The curriculum for the BA degree shall require six semesters of full-time study, extending over not less than three academic years, and shall include examinations to be held at the end of each semester.

**A 4** The number and length of written examinations shall be as laid down in the syllabuses. Dissertations, field-work, class tests, oral, aural and practical tests may also be prescribed. Coursework assessment shall be taken into account as prescribed in the syllabuses.

---

### **Selection of courses**

**A 5** Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Changes to the selection of courses may be made only during the first two weeks of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the first two weeks of the semester shall not normally be considered.

**A 6** Candidates in any semester shall select courses only after obtaining approval from the Heads of the Departments concerned, and the selection shall be subject to confirmation by the Board of the Faculty.

---

### **Curriculum requirements**

**A 7** To complete the curriculum, candidates shall

- (a) satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG 3 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula, and
- (b) take not less than 180 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

**A 8** Candidates shall not normally take less than 24, nor more than 36, credits in each semester, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

**A 9** To complete the first academic year of the curriculum, candidates shall follow instruction and satisfy the examiners in:

- (a) four 3-credit courses: Academic English for Arts Students; Chinese Language Enhancement; Information Technology; and one 3-credit course in Science and Technology studies for non-science students<sup>2</sup>;

---

<sup>2</sup> This regulation is applicable to candidates admitted to the first year of the curriculum in or after 2001-02.

[Some candidates, e.g. those who are non-Cantonese speaking or have no knowledge of the language, may be exempted from attending the Chinese language enhancement course and permitted to substitute another 3-credit course for it. Candidates may be exempted from attending the Information Technology course on the basis of the results obtained from an aptitude test in IT, or by satisfying the examiners in an approved course which incorporates an IT element as specified in the syllabuses.]

- (b) at least 6 credits from a single department/programme/centre in each of any three out of the following four groupings:

Group 1 - American Studies, Chinese, English, European Studies, Japanese Studies, Language Centre

Group 2 - Geography, History

Group 3 - Comparative Literature, Linguistics, Philosophy

Group 4 - Fine Arts, Music; and

- (c) if necessary, additional courses to make up a total of 60 credits in the first academic year from:

(i) any departments/programmes/centre listed in (b) above; and/or

(ii) the following departments/school/programme:

- Buddhist Studies
- Cognitive Science
- Computer Science and Information Systems
- Economics and Finance
- Mathematics
- Physics
- Politics and Public Administration
- Psychology
- Social Work and Social Administration
- Sociology
- Statistics and Actuarial Science

provided that candidates shall not, within their normal study load of 60 credits, select more than 30 credits from any one department/programme/centre listed in (b) above, nor shall candidates select more than 6 credits from those offered by the departments/school listed in (c)(ii) above.

Candidates who are willing to take an additional study load shall be allowed to take up to 6 credits over and above the normal load of 60 credits in the first academic year.

**A 10** To complete the second and third academic years of the curriculum, candidates shall normally follow instruction in a selection of courses which must include one major and which may include a second major or up to two minors<sup>3</sup>, with the combination of courses for each major and minor being as prescribed in the syllabuses, and shall satisfy the examiners in coursework and in any examinations for these courses as selected in accordance with Regulation A11.

**A 11** The second and third academic years of the curriculum shall normally consist of 60 credits each academic year including:

- (a) Professional English for Arts Students (3 credits) to be taken in the second year<sup>2</sup>; and at least 12 credits and not more than 18 credits of elective courses offered outside the Faculty of Arts for the purpose of inter-Faculty broadening; and

<sup>2</sup> This regulation is applicable to candidates admitted to the first year of the curriculum in or after 2001-02.

<sup>3</sup> The option of declaring a minor is applicable only to candidates in the second year of the curriculum in 2001-02 and for new cohorts admitted from 2001-02 onwards.



either

- (b) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in any one of the following departments/centre/programmes:

- American Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- English
- European Studies
- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Language Centre
- Linguistics
- Music
- Philosophy;

or

- (c) other credits, of which at least 48 shall be in a major taken in one of the departments/programmes listed in (b) above, together with any oral examination required by the examiners, in combinations of courses offered by the following departments/centre/school/programmes teaching in the Faculty of Arts:

- American Studies
- Buddhist Studies
- Chinese
- Comparative Literature
- Computer Science and Information Systems
- Earth Sciences
- Economics and Finance
- English
- European Studies
- Fine Arts
- Geography
- History
- Japanese Studies
- Journalism and Media Studies Centre
- Language Centre
- Linguistics
- Mathematics
- Music
- Philosophy
- Physics
- Politics and Public Administration
- Psychology
- Social Work and Social Administration
- Sociology
- Statistics and Actuarial Science

A candidate's selection of major(s), minor(s) and of cross-departmental course combinations shall be made only with the approval of the Heads of the Departments/Centre/School concerned, and a candidate's choice shall normally be confined to those combinations which are possible under the published timetable. Candidates shall not be permitted to take, within their normal study load of 120 credits, more than 30 credits outside the Faculty or more than 12 credits from the Department of Social Work and Social Administration, except that a candidate taking a major in the Department of Philosophy or in one of the following majors shall be permitted to take up to 48 credits from the departments/school/programme listed in Regulation A9(c)(ii) above: American Studies, History, Linguistics and Philosophy, or Politics and Philosophy.

Candidates who wish to exceed the normal load of 60 credits in each academic year shall be allowed to take up to 6 additional credits from the departments/school/programme listed in Regulation A9(b) and (c)(ii) above in each of second and third academic years of the BA curriculum.

### **Assessment and grades**

**A 12** Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of: coursework, written examinations or tests, continuous assessment of class performance, field work, research or project reports, or in any other manner as specified in the syllabuses. Grades shall be awarded in accordance with UG 5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.

**A 13** Written examinations or tests shall normally be held at the end of the semester in which it is taught unless otherwise provided for in the syllabuses. Candidates may be required to sit written examinations or tests for more than one course on any particular date.

**A 14** Courses in which a candidate is given an F grade shall be recorded on the transcript, together with the new grade obtained by the candidate repeating the failed course under Regulation A16(a). Any failed grade(s) shall be included in calculating the Semester GPA and shall be taken into account for the purpose of honours classification, except as provided for under Regulation A16(b).

**A 15** Except as provided for under Regulation A16(b) below, candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for upgrading purposes.

### **A 16**

- (a) Candidates in their first or second academic year who have failed in not more than 18 credits of courses shall be required in the subsequent academic year to repeat the failed courses, or select new courses which bear the same number of credits and are listed as being in same academic year of study as the failed courses, in addition to the courses that they are required to take that academic year, in the manner specified in Regulation A14 above.
- (b) A candidate in any academic year of study who has failed in more than 18 credits but in not more than 36 credits shall be required to repeat an academic year of study in the manner specified by the Board of the Faculty. Candidates who are required to repeat an academic year of study may re-take all or part of the courses they have already passed or may select new courses, and in such an event the grades obtained in the repeating academic year shall replace those from the previous academic year for the purpose of honours classification, but grades obtained in both academic years shall be recorded on the transcript of the candidate.
- (c) Candidates who are permitted to repeat the academic year under the provisions of A16(b) and whose progress in the repeated academic year is unsatisfactory shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty.
- (d) Candidates in their first or second academic year of study who have failed in more than 36 credits shall be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty.

- (e) Candidates who have obtained a Semester GPA of less than 1.0 at any time shall also be required to discontinue their studies in the Faculty.
- (f) Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present for any paper of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination in the paper to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate's absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year's examinations, and the provisions made in these regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

### **Advanced standing**

**A 17** Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere in accordance with UG 2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. Advanced credits granted shall be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but shall not be included in the calculation of the Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

### **Degree classification**

**A 18** The BA degree shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty at its absolute discretion, taking into account the standard attained by candidates in the written examinations and in coursework, as well as other relevant factors. Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate's Semester GPA or Cumulative GPA.

## **SYLLABUSES FOR THE DEGREE OF BACHELOR OF ARTS**

- (N.B. 1. These syllabuses should be read in conjunction with the BA degree regulations.  
2. On application to the various departments undergraduates may obtain further details of courses and lists of books recommended for further study.)

## **CHINESE LANGUAGE ENHANCEMENT**

### **CART1001. Practical Chinese language course for Arts students (3 credits)**

1. Practical Chinese Writing Skills 實用中文寫作技巧 (3 lectures)
  - a. *Pai-hua* or literary Chinese
  - b. some characteristics of the Chinese language and communication skills in Chinese 漢語特性和語文運用
  - c. special characteristics of the language of practical Chinese 實用中文的寫作特點
2. Chinese Characters 漢字 (3 lectures)
  - a. standardized form 規範漢字
  - b. simplified Chinese characters 簡化字
  - c. different scripts 異體字

3. Letter-writing 書信 (3 lectures)
  - a. characteristics of personal, business and official letters  
私人、事務、公務信件的特點
  - b. business letters for Arts students: objectives and techniques  
事務信件的撰寫技巧 (2 lectures)
4. Office Documents 辦公室文書 (3 lectures)
  - a. notices and announcements 啟事與通告
  - b. proposals 建議書
  - c. minutes and reports 會議文書
5. Chinese for Special Purposes (Arts) 專業中文 (6 lectures)
  - a. Chinese culture: an introduction for Arts students 中國文化簡介
  - b. an introduction of contemporary Chinese fiction  
當代中國小說導讀 (2 lectures)
  - c. target-oriented writing: objectives and strategies 目標為本寫作 (2 lectures)
  - d. the art of persuasion 說服性文章的撰寫技巧
  - e. the art of rhetoric 修辭技巧
6. Public Speaking 演說 (2 lectures)

This course will be offered in the second semester.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE ENHANCEMENT

### ECEN1201. Academic English for Arts students (3 credits)

The purpose of this course is to prepare Arts students to pursue their university studies successfully through the medium of English. The primary focus of the course is on writing well-organized and well-written academic essays with appropriate citation and referencing. Students will also learn how to participate fluently and confidently in small group discussions and take greater responsibility for improving their English language skills both in and beyond the classroom. Use of information technology is an integral part of the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### ECEN2202. Professional English for Arts students (3 credits)

This course aims to prepare students to present themselves in a professional manner in English in the workplace environment in Hong Kong. Students will develop oral skills essential to business communication, as used in telephoning, interviews and oral presentations. They will also learn and practice principles of effective written communication by writing, for example, a resume and letters. Throughout the course, students will explore and experience the use of English in the workplace through direct contact with employers. Use of information technology is an integral part of the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## INTERDISCIPLINARY MINORS

Starting from the academic year 2001-02, candidates in the second year of the curriculum may select courses from the lists specified in the syllabuses to satisfy the requirements for up to two interdisciplinary minors but shall not be permitted to take more than 12 credits from one department/programme to satisfy the requirements of one minor. The same course shall not be taken to fulfil the requirements for a major and a minor, or for two minors.

The interdisciplinary minor programmes are as follows. Courses with prerequisites have been asterisked (\*); please refer to the syllabus of the relevant department/programme for the prerequisite.

## 1. Histories and Cultures of the Asia-Pacific Region

A minor in the histories and cultures of the Asia-Pacific region will provide you with a broad general knowledge about history and thought in the region of which Hong Kong is a part. This will be useful regardless of what you are studying as a major and can thus be recommended for all students in the Faculty of Arts.

- AMER2006. Here's looking at you, kid: America as a foreign country (6 credits)
- AMER2014. 'A dream in the heart': varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
- AMER2019. War on the silver screen: the battle for Vietnam at home (6 credits)
- CHIN2228. May-fourth Movement and modern Chinese thought (3 credits)
- CHIN2229. Modern Chinese thought and culture: 1927-1947 (3 credits)
- CHIN2231. Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (3 credits)
- CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)
- CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese Culture (3 credits)
- CLIT2043. Reading the empire of the senses: Japan in contemporary culture (6 credits)
- CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)
- ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)\*
- FINE2004. Later Chinese painting (Yuan to Qing) (6 credits)\*
- FINE2008. The poetics of Japanese narrative painting (6 credits)\*
- FINE2011. Japanese art: the interactive dimension (6 credits)\*
- HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)
- HIST2043. The city in modern China (6 credits)
- HIST2044. The city in traditional China (6 credits)
- JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)
- LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)
- MUSI2033. Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)\*
- PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: Ethics (6 credits)\*
- PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)\*

## 2. Contemporary China and Hong Kong

This minor gives students with a general interest in China and Hong Kong a better understanding of physical, cultural and human environments of the two societies within the larger global and regional settings. The courses offered examine a range of contemporary development issues and future challenges faced by China and Hong Kong in an increasingly globalized world.

- CHIN2131. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)
- CHIN2132. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)
- CHIN2133. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)
- CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: popular culture (6 credits)
- ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)\*
- FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)\*
- FINE2005. Twentieth century Chinese art (6 credits)\*
- FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)\*
- GEOG2027. China's tourism resources and management (6 credits)

- GEOG2054. Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)
- HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, Part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)
- HIST2045. Shanghai Grand: History, culture and society in urban China (6 credits)
- HIST2052. Social issues in Hong Kong history (6 credits)
- LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)\*
- LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2010. Music of China (6 credits)

### 3. The West in Asia

In 'The West in Asia,' courses examine various ways in which Western nations and people have influenced Asia in the past and present. You will gain a general appreciation for the many ways in which cross-cultural interaction affects societies, cultures, and individuals, as well as a specific understanding of how Euroamerican engagement with Asia has shaped the modern world.

- AMER2006. Here's looking at you, kid: America as a foreign country (6 credits)
- AMER2014. 'A dream in the heart': varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
- AMER2019. War on the silver screen: the battle for Vietnam at home (6 credits)
- CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)
- CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism I (6 credits)
- ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2071. The East (6 credits)\*
- FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)\*
- HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)
- HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)
- HIST2054. The United States and Asia, 1945-1975 (6 credits)
- LANG3022. French eastern narratives – III.6 (3 credits)\*
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)\*
- PHIL2027. Special topic: Rousseau's philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2040. Nietzsche (6 credits)\*
- PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)\*

### 4. Critical Thinking, Reading, and Writing

'Critical thinking, reading and writing' refers to a set of skills for examining, evaluating and expressing ideas. These skills include knowing how to collect and present evidence, apply standards of logic and probability, compare opinions, decide what is relevant or irrelevant, and draw reasonable conclusions. This minor programme includes a selection of courses from different subject disciplines that either discuss these critical skills in detail or demonstrate them in action.

- CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)
- CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)
- CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory I (6 credits)
- CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)
- ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2069. Form and meaning (6 credits)\*
- HIST3015. The theory and practice of history (6 credits)
- JAPN2012. Education in Japan (6 credits)
- LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)\*
- PHIL2110. Knowledge (6 credits)\*

## 5. The Culture of Business in the Modern World

The minor in The Culture of Business in the Modern World will prepare you to understand better the cultural dimensions of the economic processes affecting all of us. You will see that business is more than just economics; and money, stocks, and advertising are cultural forms that people and social institutions interpret and use in work, recreation, and commercial activities that are part of everyday life in the modern world.

- AMER2018. 'Show me the money': doing business with Americans (6 credits)
- AMER3001. Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part I (6 credits)
- AMER3002. Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part II (6 credits)
- CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)
- CHIN2338. Translation of promotional material (3 credits)
- CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (3 credits)
- EUST2001. European political and economic institutions (6 credits)
- GEOG2045. Retail location (6 credits)
- GEOG2056. Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)
- GEOG2057. Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)
- HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
- HIST2030. From dependencies to dragons: economic history of twentieth-century Southeast Asia (6 credits)
- JAPN2010. Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)
- JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)
- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)\*
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to Techno (6 credits)
- PHIL2070. Pragmatism (6 credits)\*

## 6. Technology in the Humanities

The aim of this minor is to provide students with the opportunity to explore the relationship between technology and the humanities. Different aspects of technology will be examined in order to give students multiple perspectives on how the relationship between technology and the humanities has evolved, to critically evaluate the role of technology in the humanities, and to examine the range of opportunities available regarding the application of technology in the humanities.

- AMER2015. The American city (6 credits)
- AMER2022. 'What's on TV?' Television and American culture (6 credits)
- CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)
- ENGL2037. Science fiction (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2050. English corpus linguistics (6 credits)\*
- GEOG2011. Introduction to geographic information systems (6 credits)
- GEOG2019. Environmental GIS (6 credits)
- GEOG2059. Geography of information technology (6 credits)
- HIST2049. Technology and social change: a history of everyday life (6 credits)
- HIST3016. Computer methods for historical studies (6 credits)
- LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)\*
- LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2013. Computer and electronic music (6 credits)
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to Techno (6 credits)
- PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)\*
- PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)
- PHIL2702. Special topic: Philosophy and medicine (6 credits)

## 7. Globalism: Cultures, Spaces, Languages

The term 'Globalism' suggests an organized phenomenon that could be studied through a coherent set of theoretical frameworks. The courses in this 'Minor' explore and challenge this understanding of 'Globalism'. They show how a global dynamic runs with varying intensities in visual and literary representations, in different times and places, and how the impact on each other of the 'global' and the 'local' can have very diverse effects on and meanings for different cultures and societies.

- AMER2014. 'A dream in the heart': varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)
- AMER2018. 'Show me the money': doing business with Americans (6 credits)
- AMER2022. 'What's on TV?' Television and American culture (6 credits)
- CHIN2333. Culture and translation (3 credits)
- CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (3 credits)
- CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (3 credits)
- CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)
- CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)
- ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2051. Critical and creative approaches to English (6 credits)\*
- EUST3001. Contemporary European Culture (6 credits)
- FINE2011. Japanese art: the interactive dimension (6 credits)\*
- FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)\*
- FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)\*
- GEOG2061. Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)
- GEOG2079. Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)
- HIST2026. Interpreting Japanese history through movies (6 credits)
- HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)
- HIST2054. The United States and Asia, 1945-1975 (6 credits)
- JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)
- LANG0001. Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)
- LANG0002. Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)
- LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)
- LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)\*
- MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to Techno (6 credits)
- MUSI2019. Music in society (3 credits)
- PHIL2360. Political philosophy (6 credits)
- PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)\*
- PHIL2610. Philosophy of language (6 credits)\*

## 8. Women and Gender

Adopting both feminist and other cultural approaches, this 'Minor' offers in-depth explorations of women and gender issues. Questions of representation, history, language, and demographics will be raised across a number of disciplines and societies.

- AMER2024. Gender at work: case studies (6 credits)
- CLIT2013. Feminist cultural studies I (6 credits)
- CLIT2038. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film: II (6 credits)\*
- CLIT2069. The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)
- ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)\*
- ENGL2080. Women, feminism, and writing II (6 credits)\*
- FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)\*



HIST2032.	Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)
HIST2056.	Gender and history (6 credits)
JAPN2013.	Women in Japan (6 credits)
LING2011.	Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)*
LING2036.	Child language (6 credits)*
PHIL2011.	Aristotle (6 credits)
PHIL2035.	Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)*
PHIL2360.	Political philosophy (6 credits)

## 9. Self-expression, Communication, and the Human Subject

What is a self? Do different cultures have different selves? What does the self 'express' when we engage in creative thought and how are cultural forms used and changed. Are we limited by those cultural forms? In this minor, you will explore answers to these and related questions by investigating creative expression in various arts and cultural forms.

AMER2013.	Experimentation and liberation?: 20th century arts in America (6 credits)
AMER2022.	'What's on TV?' Television and American culture (6 credits)
AMER2025.	American myths, American movies (6 credits)
CHIN2141.	Functional Chinese I (6 credits)
CHIN2142.	Functional Chinese II (6 credits)
CHIN2333.	Culture and translation (3 credits)
CLIT2003.	Modern European drama: drama and the modern subject (6 credits)
CLIT2065.	Hong Kong culture: representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)
ENGL2027.	Text and discourse in contemporary English (6 credits)*
HIST2026.	Interpreting Japanese history through movies (6 credits)
HIST2031.	History through film (6 credits)
JAPN2020.	Japanese language II(a) (6 credits)*
JAPN3012.	Japanese language III(a) (6 credits)*
LANG0004.	Introduction to Spanish and Spanish American literature (3 credits)
LING2002.	Conversation analysis (6 credits)*
LING2037.	Bilingualism (6 credits)*
MUSI2018.	Understanding music (3 credits)
PHIL2040.	Nietzsche (6 credits)*
PHIL2140.	Philosophy of social science (6 credits)

## AMERICAN STUDIES PROGRAMME

The Programme in American Studies provides an interdisciplinary approach to the study of American culture and civilization. Students must gain admittance to the programme by taking **TWO** or more of the first-year courses - **'Born in the USA': U.S. youth cultures, Reading the American dream, Asia on America's screen, 'A nation of nations': the American immigrant experience, Consuming culture: decoding American symbols and Issues in American business: Wall Street.** Enrolments may be limited in these courses. Students may take these first-year courses in the second year as overload, if they have not registered for them in the first year. B.A. students pursuing an American Studies major may take no more than eight 6-credit courses (or the equivalent) in another faculty. *(All first year courses are available as 6-credit inter-Faculty electives.)*

**First Year****AMER1002. I.1 Reading the American dream (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a half-year course which provides a multidisciplinary introduction to notions of success, the American Dream from the time of settlement to the modern period. The course will use primary documents, music, and film clips as texts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER1009. I.2 Consuming culture: decoding American symbols (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Images of America (as revealed in Hollywood films, television, advertisements, music and music videos, news media and consumer products) shape our vision of US culture. For a course specifically designed with Hong Kong students in mind, we will focus on similarities and contrasts between regional Asian cultures and US cultures. Our aim will be to both explore and decode cultural 'products'. We see National popular culture as an extension and creation of National myths. A study of this culture provides a key to behaviour patterns in exploring why and how people (cultural and/or National groups and individuals) act as they do and what it means. The course will consider distinctions between 'high' and 'low' cultures and see how class, gender and race affect notions of 'culture' generally and how they shape the particular themes of US culture under discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER1011. I.3 'Born in the USA': U.S. youth cultures (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

'Baby boomers,' 'Hippies,' 'Yuppies,' and 'Gen Xers,' are labels assigned to various generations of American youth. This first-year survey course explores the connection between historical change and adolescence/early adulthood in the United States during the second half of the 20th century. Throughout the term we will consider youth culture through the interdisciplinary mix of history, politics, literature, and popular culture. The course will offer students a chance to reflect on their own experiences as adolescents/young adults and focus on improving critical thinking, speaking and writing skills.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER1012. I.4 Asia on America's screen (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

'The East' has always held a dual attraction – of romance and danger, for Hollywood. The lure of wealth, trade and exoticism that brought millions of Americans across the Pacific provided rich material for movie drama. This attraction was reinforced by the three wars America fought in Asia. War, violence, romance and exoticism have increasingly filled America's movie screen as a crowd puller and in the process shaped and mis-shaped America's view of Asia.

This course will explore cinematic representations of Asia as a place and its people as constructed by Hollywood.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER1013. I.5 'A nation of nations': the American immigrant experience (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

'Once I thought to write a history of immigrants in America,' wrote noted American historian Oscar Handlin. 'I discovered that immigrants were American history.' This course will examine the immigrant experiences of European, Asian, African, Latino/a and Jewish Americans using materials from literature, history, film, and music. It will also chart crucial developments in American immigration law, as well as the ongoing political debate surrounding America's unique role as a 'nation of nations.'

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER1015. I.6 Issues in American business: Wall Street (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will draw on selected issues in American business. It will be coordinated by American Studies lecturers and taught by Hong-Kong faculty and representatives of the local business community.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**Second and Third Years****The Major**

In order to ensure reasonable coverage and interdisciplinary understanding, students who intend to pursue a single major in American Studies must, in their second and third years, take a minimum of eight 6-credit courses (or the equivalent).

These courses must include 48 credits from the courses below:

3 American Studies Core Courses (30 credits)

**AMER2001. Foundations of American studies (12-credit course in second year)**

**AMER2021. On the road again: U.S.A. field trip in American Studies (6 credits)**

**AMER3003. A senior seminar in American studies (12-credit course in third year)**

In exceptional cases, a waiver may be granted for a required course.

2 6-credit English (American Literature and Language), Fine Arts, History, or Music courses drawn from

**ENGL2013. American literature I\* (6 credits)**

**ENGL2014. American literature II\* (6 credits)**

**ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)**

**ENGL2043. Twentieth century American women's writings: awakenings (6 credits)**

**ENGL2067. American English\* (6 credits)**

**ENGL2072. American literature III\* (6 credits)**

**FINE2020. American art (6 credits)**

**HIST2015. The United States before 1900\* (6 credits)**

**HIST2016. The United States in the twentieth century\* (6 credits)**

- HIST2031.** History through film (6 credits)  
**HIST2053.** The Cold War\* (6 credits)  
**HIST2054.** The United States and Asia: 1945-1975\* (6 credits)
- MUSI2031.** American music\* (6 credits)

The remaining credits may be drawn from the above courses or from the following list:

#### American Studies

- AMER2002.** The road in American culture\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2006.** Here's looking at you, kid: America as a foreign country\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2007.** Dissertation\* (12 credits)  
**AMER2008.** A special topic in American studies\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2011.** A special subject in American studies (12 credits)  
**AMER2013.** Experimentation and liberation?: 20th century arts in America\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2014.** 'A dream in the heart': varieties of Asian American culture\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2015.** The American city \*(6 credits)  
**AMER2016.** Making it in America: the 'Model Minority' experience\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2017.** New stories from the 'old' American West\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2018.** 'Show me the money': doing business with Americans\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2019.** War on the silver screen: the battle for Vietnam at home\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2020.** 'Smoke signals': native American literature and American culture\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2022.** 'What's on TV?': Television and American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2023.** 'Down South' and 'Out West': regions in American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2024.** Gender at work: case studies (6 credits)  
**AMER2025.** American myths, American movies (6 credits)  
**AMER2026.** American spaces: Regions in American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2027.** Checks and balances: an interdisciplinary introduction to the American political system (6 credits)  
**AMER2028.** American media: the entertainment economy (6 credits)  
**AMER2029.** Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)  
**AMER3001.** Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part I\* (6 credits)  
**AMER3002.** Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part II\* (6 credits)

#### Comparative Literature

- CLIT2007.** Film culture I (6 credits)  
**CLIT2008.** Film culture II (6 credits)  
**CLIT2019.** Studies in American culture: film genre\* (6 credits)  
**CLIT2020.** Studies in American culture: contemporary cinema\* (6 credits)  
**CLIT2059.** Feminine roles and cultural myths\* (6 credits)

#### English (American Literature and Language)

- ENGL2025.** American literature\* (12 credits)

#### Fine Arts

- FINE2031.** The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)

## History

**HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S.\* (6 credits)**

---

## Music

**MUSI2015. Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)**  
**MUSI2017. Love, sex and death in music of the modern world (6 credits)**  
**MUSI2034. American film music\* (6 credits)**

---

## Politics and Public Administration

**POLI0016. Gender and development (6 credits)**  
**POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)**  
**POLI0044. American democracy\* (6 credits)**  
**POLI0047. United States foreign policy\* (6 credits)**  
**POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)**

---

## Sociology

**SOCI0007. Cultural studies: themes and perspectives (6 credits)**  
**SOCI0014. Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)**  
**SCOI0019. Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)**  
**SOCI0031. Race and ethnic relations (6 credits)**

---

\* highly recommended courses

---

**Double Major**

In order to ensure breadth and a core of specific disciplinary knowledge, students in American Studies may meet the requirements for a major in American Studies and also satisfy the requirements for a major in one of the other programmes offering a major in the Faculty of Arts or Social Sciences, thus achieving a 'double major' in American Studies and in another department or programme. Each student must ensure that he/she meets the specific faculty requirements for each major. BA students majoring in American Studies and a discipline outside the Faculty of Arts may take no more than 48 credits in the other faculties. The 48 credits constituting the American Studies part of the double major must include:

3 American Studies Core Courses (30 credits)

**AMER2001. Foundations of American studies (12-credit course in second year)**  
**AMER2021. On the road again: U.S.A. field trip in American Studies (6 credits)**  
**AMER3003. A senior seminar in American studies (12-credit course in third year)**

In exceptional cases, a waiver may be granted for a required course.

the remaining credits drawn from the following:

## American Studies

- AMER2002.** The road in American culture\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2006.** Here's looking at you, kid: America as a foreign country\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2007.** Dissertation\* (12 credits)  
**AMER2008.** A special topic in American studies\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2011.** A special subject in American studies (12 credits)  
**AMER2013.** Experimentation and liberation?: 20th century arts in America\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2014.** 'A dream in the heart': varieties of Asian American culture\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2015.** The American city\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2016.** Making it in America: the 'Model Minority' experience\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2017.** New stories from the 'old' American West\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2018.** 'Show me the money': doing business with Americans\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2019.** War on the silver screen: the battle for Vietnam at home\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2020.** 'Smoke signals': native American literature and American culture\* (6 credits)  
**AMER2022.** 'What's on TV?' Television and American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2023.** 'Down South' and 'Out West': Regions in American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2024.** Gender at work: Case studies (6 credits)  
**AMER2025.** American myths, American movies (6 credits)  
**AMER2026.** American Spaces: Regions in American culture (6 credits)  
**AMER2027.** Checks and Balances: an interdisciplinary introduction to the American political system (6 credits)  
**AMER2028.** American media: the entertainment economy (6 credits)  
**AMER2029.** Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)  
**AMER3001.** Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part I\* (6 credits)  
**AMER3002.** Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part II\* (6 credits)
- 

## Comparative Literature

- CLIT2007.** Film culture I (6 credits)  
**CLIT2008.** Film culture II (6 credits)  
**CLIT2019.** Studies in American culture: film genre\* (6 credits)  
**CLIT2020.** Studies in American culture: contemporary cinema\* (6 credits)  
**CLIT2059.** Feminine roles and cultural myths\* (6 credits)
- 

## English (American Literature and Language)

- ENGL2013.** American literature I\* (6 credits)  
**ENGL2014.** American literature II\* (6 credits)  
**ENGL2025.** American literature\* (12 credits)  
**ENGL2040.** Asian American literature (6 credits)  
**ENGL2043.** Twentieth century American women's writings: Awakenings (6 credits)  
**ENGL2067.** American English\* (6 credits)  
**ENGL2072.** American literature III\* (6 credits)
- 

## Fine Arts

- FINE2020.** American art\* (6 credits)  
**FINE2031.** The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)

## History (American)

---

<b>HIST2015.</b>	<b>The United States before 1900* (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2016.</b>	<b>The United States in the twentieth century* (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2031.</b>	<b>History through film (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2032.</b>	<b>Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S.* (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2053.</b>	<b>The Cold War* (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2054.</b>	<b>The United States and Asia: 1945-1975* (6 credits)</b>

---

## Music

<b>MUSI2015.</b>	<b>Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2017.</b>	<b>Love, sex and death in music of the modern world (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2031.</b>	<b>American music* (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2034.</b>	<b>American film music* (6 credits)</b>

---

## Politics and Public Administration

<b>POLI0016.</b>	<b>Gender and development (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0021.</b>	<b>Understanding global issues (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0044.</b>	<b>American democracy* (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0047.</b>	<b>United States foreign policy* (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0052.</b>	<b>International relations of East Asia (6 credits)</b>

---

## Sociology

<b>SOCI0007.</b>	<b>Cultural studies: themes and perspectives (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0014.</b>	<b>Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0019.</b>	<b>Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0031.</b>	<b>Race and ethnic relations (6 credits)</b>

---

\* highly recommended courses

---

**Second and Third Years***American Studies***AMER2001. II Foundations of American studies (to be taken in second year) (12 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a full-year course which is a requisite for majors in the American Studies programme. It follows on from the introductory courses offered in the first year. This course provides advanced interdisciplinary perspectives on the United States, which complement the disciplinary approaches offered in other courses in the programme.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2002. II/III The road in American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Dealing with film, fiction, music, material culture and architecture, and the electronic highway, this course will consider the road in America as reality and icon.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER2006. II/III Here's looking at you, kid: America as a foreign country (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will explore how America is looked at from the outside. Paralleling the idea of the 'Empire writing back' in post-colonial studies, this course considers the reactions of 'outsiders' to a globalization, which is often seen as Americanization. We will consider various genres of communication including film, advertisements and music, but the emphasis will be on various genres of writing - prose, poetry, newspaper articles, short stories and novels.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2007. II/III Dissertation (12 credits)**

The dissertation shall be completed and presented for examination by April 30 of the academic year in which the course is taken.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2008. II/III A special topic in American studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2011. II/III A special subject in American studies (12 credits)**

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2032. II/III Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)  
(Cross-Listing in Department of History and Programme in American Studies)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course will foreground themes and issues in women's history/gender history in the 19th and 20th century. By focusing on Hong Kong and the U.S., students will work within a comparative framework to explore difference and common ground between societies and selected historical periods. Topics include: varieties of women's reform movements, gender and World War II, and gender and economic transformation in the late 20th century.

(Note: BAII students wishing to take this course may do so with the permission of the Department of History or Programme in American Studies.)

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2013. II/III Experimentation and liberation?: 20th century arts in America (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this interdisciplinary survey of 20th century U.S. music, art, film, television and popular media, several lecturers will consider popular (mainstream) and experimental forms. Music lectures will discuss ragtime, jazz, big band, popular music, blues, rock and the growth of truly 'American' musical ideas and liberatory meanings. Other topics will include the rigidity of academic music, the freedom of 'downtown' music, and the rise of minimalism, performance art and postmodern approaches to music. Art History lectures will build on music lectures focusing on the related themes of American abstract expressionism, the civil rights movement, feminism, and modernism and postmodernism. Film lectures will compare Hollywood genres and non-Hollywood experimental film. The course concludes with a discussion of vernacular poetry, rap, and lectures on television, popular culture, the internet, and the American hegemonic presence in a global media market.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**AMER2014. II/III 'A dream in the heart': varieties of Asian American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Like so many other immigrants to the United States, Asians – Chinese, Japanese, Filipinos, South Asians, Vietnamese – were also drawn by the dream of Gold Mountain. Yet once in America, they would confront not only promise and possibility but the dream's betrayal: hostility, rejection, and exclusion. This course will explore the varieties of Asian American cultures that emerge out of the painful, disruptive struggles between expectation and reality faced by these immigrants, their children, and their children's children and the representation of their experiences in the arts, media, and popular culture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2015. II/III The American city (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

As a center of growth, power, and cultural diversity, the American city has always occupied a crucial symbolic place in America's vision of itself as a new nation. 'A cruel city, but a lovely one, a savage city, yet it had such tenderness' – this quotation from Thomas Wolfe's 'A Vision of the City' is representative of the many and varied cultural representations of the American City as fulfilling as well as betraying the American Dream. This course will tour such important American cities as New York, Washington, Chicago and Los Angeles, through the media of art, architecture, literature, and film.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2016. II/III Making it in America: the 'Model Minority' experience (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Asian and Jewish Americans are frequently described as 'model minorities,' for achieving the American dream of education, wealth, and political power. Implicit in this notion of the model minority is a critique of those ethnic or minority groups in America who fail to fit the 'model.' This course will examine and challenge the 'model minority' idea in American culture and politics, using materials from literature, film, politics, and popular culture. Special attention will be given to instances of inter-minority conflict and co-operation, as individual American minority groups attempt to achieve their own version of American success.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2017. II/III New stories from the 'old' American West (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

From President Bill Clinton's references to '21st century frontiers' to David Wu's 'Go West' television program on Channel V, diverse images and histories of the American West are invoked in politics, literature, business, and popular culture. This course is a series of seminars that will consider the United States – west of the Mississippi River – as geographic space and symbolic place from the 19th century to the present. Topics include: The mythic west, Native American literature and culture, Chinese Americans and the west, Borderlands Theory, gender and the west, comparative frontiers (Canada, Australia, Latin America, and China), and visual representations of the west in art, television, and film.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2018. II/III 'Show me the money': doing business with Americans (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designed to familiarize students with business practice in the U.S. and in American corporations in Hong Kong. Weekly sessions will alternate between lectures and discussions with members of the American business community in the Asia-Pacific region. Topics include: U.S.

Business History and economic cycles, American entrepreneurs, the ethics and etiquette of U.S. corporate culture, government/business relationships, gender and business, and business and technological change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2019. II/III War on the silver screen: the battle for Vietnam at home (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The Vietnam War was the first war in the age of the television and the first war that America lost. The emotions aroused by the loss of American lives and the images of violence and brutality made Hollywood an important actor in the war for hearts and minds. This course will examine the role movies played in shaping public opinion.

This weekly seminar course will also study and compare short-texts – short stories, poems and reportage pieces with the cinematic representations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2020. II/III 'Smoke signals': Native American literature and American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

America was not 'discovered' by European explorers and adventurers. The continent was peopled by hundreds of tribes representing many cultures and many histories. These natives (what to call them – Indians, Native Americans, First Peoples – remains a subject of contention) offered the newcomers an alternative way of life; they challenged their Western/European cultural assumptions; but, most of all, they were perceived as a threat to be eliminated as the settlers/colonizers moved ever westward. In this course we will not only examine the Native American literary tradition, but we will also investigate the processes by which this tradition has entered into the dominant culture, how it has been transformed by such encounters, and how, in turn, it has altered the national identity.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2021. II/III On the road again: U.S.A. field trip in American Studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes by permission of instructor.)*

Concentrating on Boston, New York, Washington D.C., Williamsburg, and Orlando, this course will explore the variety and complexity of American culture. Part of this course may include interaction with students from the College of William and Mary to experience American university life and study Williamsburg and Washington D.C. This course is required of American Studies majors but may include other students as well.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2022. II/III 'What's on TV?' Television and American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Television has been a dramatic force in US history and culture. US television shows and programming styles have been exported globally or are modified to suit diverse cultural settings yet little critical analysis of the power of television is present in Hong Kong. This course offers students a chance to consider the impact of television inside and outside of the US. Topics to be discussed in the course include: The history of television, strategies for critical TV viewing, war and TV, educational television, youth culture and TV, and TV programming in Hong Kong. Guest lectures will be given from the media industry.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER2023. II/III 'Down South' and 'Out West': Regions in American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Geographical space is an important factor to consider in the study of American culture. This course looks at two regions in the US, the west and the south, and the way these spaces have been constructed as historical, literary, and cultural communities. This interdisciplinary introduction to regionalism in the US will be team taught and cover major themes in the 19th and 20th centuries including westward expansion, Slavery and the Civil War, migration, race, gender, ethnicity, food culture, and comparisons between the 'Old' and 'New' South and West.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2024. II/III Gender at work: Case studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Is there such a thing as a 'feminine' or 'masculine' managerial style? How is the office gendered space? How do cultural differences in views toward gender influence the way men and women work in various settings? These questions will be discussed with the help of readings, guest speakers and popular culture. Students will have an opportunity to compare and contrast working environments and gender issues in both the US and Hong Kong, although the U.S. workplace will be the central focus of the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2025. II/III American myths, American movies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Hollywood is known to spin dreams, but they are dreamed within particular cultural contexts, and various American myths are woven into their stories. This course will look at several American myths film, such as *Gone with the Wind*, *the Wizard of Oz*, *High Noon*, *Joy Luck Club*, *American Beauty* and *Wall Street* to explore their romance and reality. This course will broaden students' knowledge of American cultural values of family, freedom, multiculturalism, individualism, personal and social responsibility. It will also critique those values, so that the reality of American culture is explored alongside its ideals. Students will be asked to define the problems and solutions suggested by the films and research the more complicated situations in the United States. The course will be culturally enriching and aims to enhance critical/creative thinking and multicultural competencies. Students will be asked to write reports on several films and their social issues.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2026. II/III American spaces: Regions in American culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Geographical space is an important factor to consider in the study of American culture. This course looks at rural, urban, and suburban spaces in the U.S., and the way they have been constructed as cultural communities. This interdisciplinary introduction will explore, for instance, utopian ideals, the history of communities, utilization of resources and space, conflicting demands for public space, and cultural representations of various American spaces.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2027. II/III Checks and balances: an interdisciplinary introduction to the American political system (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How does the American political system operate? How powerful is the American presidency? Why aren't women and people of color more fully represented in American politics? What is the relationship

between business and politics? How much influence does the media have on the American political process? What are the tensions between domestic and global agendas? These and other issues will form the basis of this course taught by representatives of various Arts and Social Science disciplines. Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2028. II/III American media: the entertainment economy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The United States exerts significant global influence, in part because of its success in marketing itself, both domestically and abroad, through media and entertainment. While many contest the economic might, content, or perspective of various genres of American media, few are exempt from its impact. This course will explore how America's unique origins gave rise to a media-machine that reaches into every facet of American life and into the lives of people around the world. It will also look at its relation to technology and politics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER2029. II/III Current perspectives on the U.S. (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students in this course will be discussing current events as reported in newspapers, magazines, television, radio broadcasts, and on the internet. The course will focus on domestic issues facing Americans at home as well as on political, economic, and cultural links between the United States and other nations. Questions to be discussed include: who makes news? what are the links between nation and news? how is bias institutionalized and challenged in news reporting? Pedagogy will be student-centered and require students to participate regularly in (and at times lead) discussions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER3001. III Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part I (to be taken in third year) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Whether at home, at school, at work or at play, institutions of various kinds structure the lives of all Americans. While institutions can be thought of in terms of discreet organizations - Harvard University, the New York Stock Exchange, the American Medical Association, the Metropolitan Museum of Art - or even the buildings in which these organizations are housed, in the broader, more abstract sense, institutions are the forms into which social activity is organized. Among the most fundamental institutions of this latter type, and the ones upon which this course will focus, are *the family, school, business and the professions, and leisure*. Each of these institutions is associated with values, beliefs and practices which, taken together, help to constitute American culture. Following a chronological approach beginning with the early 19th century and continuing through to the present, the course will examine these four types of institution in order to understand the origins of the values, beliefs and practices which they embody, how these values, beliefs and practices may have been impacted by such factors as gender, race, class, religion, ethnicity, and geographic region, and how the institutions and the ideas they embody have persisted or changed over time. In the process, we will seek to identify common themes, and to consider how certain tensions - for example between individualism and community, democracy and excellence, service and profit - have shaped each of these institutions, and through them, American society. Finally, we will also consider the extension of these institutions, and the values, beliefs and practices they embody, beyond the confines of the United States, asking how American ideas about home, school, work and play have impacted and interacted with other cultures, particularly throughout Asia.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**AMER3002. III Institutions in American life: home, school, work, and play, Part II (to be taken in third year) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of Part I, which is a pre-requisite.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**AMER3003. III A senior seminar in American studies (to be taken in third year) (12 credits)**

This is a full-year course with a different topic every year, which will depend upon students' backgrounds and interests as well as the lecturers' special strengths.

Pre-requisite for **AMER3003. A senior seminar in American studies** is **AMER2001. Foundations of American studies**, except with the consent of the instructor. (If a student has scheduling conflicts for the third-year course, he/she may, with the approval of the Programme advisor, take another American Studies course.)

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Other courses, offered from time to time by the component departments and approved by the Board of Studies in American Studies in conjunction with the department concerned, may be used to fulfil programme requirements.

---

## **BUDDHIST STUDIES**

### **Level 200/300**

**BSTC0001. Making sense of Ch'an (Zen) (6 credits)**

To many people, Ch'an (禪) has an aura of unspeakable romanticism. This course will examine the position of Ch'an within the more comprehensible framework of orthodox Buddhist Teachings, its development in Chinese history, the patriarchs (祖師) and the influences of Ch'an on Chinese thought and culture. The beauty and function of Ko'an (公案) and Ch'an poetry (禪詩) will also be studied so that students will get a feeling of the unspeakable romanticism. In addition, the practical usage of Ch'an in daily life will be explored: Ch'an and mind-development, Ch'an and self-awareness and how to make Ch'an more accessible to modern society.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

---

**BSTC0002. Life and Buddhism (6 credits)**

Our goal in life, whether it is for personal excellence, financial success or national glory, is in essence a search for happiness, for ourselves and for others. Misguided notions of happiness lead to dire consequences, resulting in suffering and unhappiness for the individual and the community. This course examines how the ancient wisdom of Buddhism teaches us the art of happiness in daily life from the following three aspects: (1) Personal cultivation (topics including the cause for suffering life and happy life, the Buddhist way of living well and dying well, the reality of life, moral causation, Threefold training, and morality in both Mahayana and Theravada traditions), (2) Improvement of human relationship (topics including the four immeasurables, social implication of the five precepts and six perfections) and (3) Improvement of social environment (topics including Buddhist perspective of wealth, Buddhist attitude towards war and peace and Buddhist ideal society).

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

## CHINESE

The aim of the Department of Chinese is to promote the understanding of Chinese language, literature and history; to further the ability of the students in the use of the Chinese language; and to study the development of the Chinese civilization and its place in the modern world.

The degree courses in the Department of Chinese are normally taught in Chinese. Course design is based on the assumption that the students have attained facility in the use of the Chinese language before entering the University, and that they have also acquired sufficient mastery of the English language to enable them to use freely references and relevant works published in English. Provision may be made from time to time for elective courses on various aspects of the Chinese civilization.

The Department offers four majors in the second and third years. Students are required to take not less than a total of 48 credits of second and third year courses in the specified group(s), and to meet other specified requirements, if any. The four majors are as follows:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature:** Group A.
- (ii) **Chinese History:** Group B.
- (iii) **Translation:** Group C (please refer to Group C for other requirements).
- (iv) **Chinese Studies:** Groups A and B.

Students are required to take the following first year courses as prerequisites for the majors unless the Head of Department approves otherwise:

- (i) **Chinese Language and Literature:** CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language and a total of not less than 6 credits of other first year courses.
- (ii) **Translation:** CHIN1311. Introduction to translation and CHIN1312. Language studies for translation I.

There are no first year prerequisites for the majors in Chinese History and Chinese Studies.

Not all the courses listed below will be offered every year. Students should refer to the departmental undergraduate handbook, published yearly and in the summer usually, for the courses on offer in the next academic year.

## GROUP A: CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE

### *First Year Courses*

#### **CHIN1101. A survey of the Chinese language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the various aspects of the Chinese language: etymology, phonology, lexicology and grammar, with special reference to the cultural context and its developments in the twentieth century. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN1102. An introduction to standard works in classical Chinese literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the classical Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN1103. An introduction to standard works in modern Chinese literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A fundamental study of standard works and selected writings in the modern and contemporary Chinese literature.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN1105. History of Chinese literature: a general survey (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at a study of the general characteristics and the development of Chinese literature from the pre-Qin period to the nineteenth century. This course is suitable for students without A-level Chinese literature attainments.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1106. Poetry and the couplet: the writing and appreciation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to enhance students' ability to appreciate and to write *shi* and *ci* poems as well as couplets.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1107. Creative writing (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides interest for all students who are impressed by the great works of modern Chinese literature and intend to acquire the writing skills to impress their readers. It examines how writers and readers interact with literary works in general and considers how meanings and effects are generated in prose, short-short stories and free verse in particular.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1108. Contrastive phonology of Putonghua and Cantonese (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to help students gain knowledge of the phonological differences and correspondences between Putonghua and Cantonese and thus improve students' language abilities in spoken Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## **Second and Third Year Courses**

### **CHIN2121. Prose up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese prose in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese prose from the pre-Qin period to the end of the Qing period.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

### **CHIN2122. Prose: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the prose of one or two of the following: Han Yu, Liu Zongyuan, Ouyang Xiu, Wang Anshi and Su Shi. Students taking this course are expected to demonstrate a sound knowledge of the prose works covered and a general ability to describe and analyse prose styles.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

### **CHIN2123. Shi poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese *shi* poetry in its various forms and styles conducted through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of Chinese *shi* poetry from earliest times to the nineteenth century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

### **CHIN2124. Shi poetry: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the *shi* poetry of one or two of the following: Cao Zhi, Tao Qian, Xie Lingyun, Wang Wei, Li Bai, Du Fu, Han Yu, Li Shangyin, Su Shi, and Huang Tingjian. Students taking this course are expected to show in the examination a sound knowledge of the *shi* poetry covered and a general ability to describe and analyse poetic styles.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

### **CHIN2125. Ci poetry up to the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A general survey of the *ci* poetry from its beginning in the Tang period to the Qing period, with special emphasis on the Song period, which is considered the golden age in the history of this literary genre. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development of the *ci* poetry from the eighth century to the nineteenth century. Its various forms and styles are examined through specimens taken from the most representative as well as best known authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.



**CHIN2126.     *Ci* poetry: selected writers (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A detailed study of the *ci* poetry of one or two of the following: Su Shi, Zhou Bangyan, Xin Qiji and Jiang Kui - the Four Great Masters of the *ci* poetry of the Song period. The course will consider the individual achievements and influences of the poets; their contemporaries will also be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2127.     Classical Chinese fiction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of classical Chinese fiction through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of classical Chinese fiction from the Tang to the Qing period.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2128.     *Xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods through an examination of specimens taken from the most representative compositions. Students taking this course are expected to gain a sound knowledge of the development and characteristics of *xiqu* of the Yuan and Ming periods.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2129.     Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in China from 1917 to 1949 and how they affected modern Chinese poetry, essays and novels.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2130.     Modern Chinese literature (1917-1949) II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of modern Chinese fiction from 1917 to 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works of representative authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2131.     Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the trends of literary thought in the Mainland since 1949 and how they have affected poetry, essays and novels.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2132.     Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese fiction in the Mainland since 1949. Attention will be centered on selected works of representative authors.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN2133. Contemporary Chinese literature (since 1949) III (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of Chinese literature in Taiwan since 1949.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2134. Prescribed texts for detailed study I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or more of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:

- (i) *Shijing*
- (ii) *Chuci*
- (iii) *Zhaoming wenxuan*

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2135. Prescribed texts for detailed study II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or both of the following, engaging various techniques of scholarship and criticism:

- (i) *Zuozhuan*
- (ii) *Zhuangzi*

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2136. Classical Chinese literary criticism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course includes a general survey of classical Chinese literary criticism with special reference to the *Wenxin diaolong*.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2138. Chinese etymology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the essential features of the Chinese characters, principles underlying their construction, and the process of evolution behind them.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2139. Chinese phonology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course includes an introduction to general phonetics, a survey of the history of Chinese phonology, and an introduction to 'rhyme books' and 'rhyme tables'.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**CHIN2140. Modern Chinese language I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:

- (i) Phonology
- (ii) Lexicology and semantics
- (iii) Philology

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**CHIN2141. Functional Chinese I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the general characteristics and the development of Functional Chinese with special reference to the use of language in Hong Kong. Particular emphasis is placed on practical writing and students taking this course are expected to acquire sufficient language skills for general communication purposes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2142. Functional Chinese II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at advancing students' language skills for general communication purposes. Particular emphasis is placed on creative writing in addition to practical writing.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2143. Modern Chinese language II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of the structure, the general characteristics and the development of the modern Chinese language; two or more of the following topics will be covered:

- (i) Grammar
- (ii) Rhetoric
- (iii) Logic

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**GROUP B: CHINESE HISTORY*****First Year Courses*****CHIN1201. Topical studies of Chinese history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines some of the major topics in Chinese political, social, economic and institutional history.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN1202. An introduction to the study of Chinese history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A foundation course in the development of Chinese history and historiography.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**CHIN1203. Chinese history of the twentieth century (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A brief survey of the transformation and reformation of China since 1900.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1204. Chinese culture in the twentieth century (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the major cultural changes since 1900.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1205. Chinese history: a general survey (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the Chinese political, social, and economic history from the early times to the present century. The course is especially suitable for students from non-Arts backgrounds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1206. An introduction to Chinese thought (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A broad overview of the teachings of Confucianism, Daoism and Buddhism, with a view to introducing students to the foundations of Chinese thought. This course is suitable for both students with or without Arts backgrounds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN1207. Traditional Chinese culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the general characteristics of traditional Chinese culture. The course is especially suitable for students from non-Arts backgrounds.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

***Second Year and Third Year Courses*****CHIN2221. History of the Qin and Han Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century B.C. to the third century.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2222. History of the Wei, Jin and the Northern-and-Southern Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the third century to the sixth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2223. History of the Sui and Tang Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the sixth century to the tenth century.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2224. History of the Song and Yuan Periods (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic histories of China from the tenth century to the fourteenth century.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2225. History of the Ming Period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the fourteenth century to the seventeenth century.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50 % examination.

---

**CHIN2226. History of the Qing Period (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the dynastic history of China from the seventeenth century to the twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2227. Politics and institutions of Republican China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the political transformation and institutional development in modern China from 1911 to 1937.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2228. May-Fourth Movement and modern Chinese thought (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the development of political doctrines in the May-Fourth Era of modern China from 1917 to 1926.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2229. Modern Chinese thought and culture: 1927-1947 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the intellectual trends and the cultural development in China from 1927 to 1947.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2230. Contemporary Chinese politics and culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the development of politics and culture in China since 1949 to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2231. Religious Daoism and popular religions in China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course gives an overview of the development of religious Daoism and Chinese popular religions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2233. History of the Chinese legal system (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main features and development of the Chinese legal system from the early times to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2234. History of Chinese political institutions (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main features and the development of Chinese political institutions from the early times to the present.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2235. Sources and methodology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course intends to provide a thorough training in research methodology related to the study of Chinese history. The ideas of noted ancient and contemporary Chinese historians will be drawn on. Particular emphasis is placed on the use of reference works and information search through internet.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2241. History of Chinese civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with Chinese civilization in general including ethnic cultures and problems in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2243. History of Chinese science and civilization (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to give an in-depth investigation of Chinese scientific thought and culture from the pre-Qin period to the early twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2244. History of *Guanxue* and *Sixue* (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the development of educational theories and institutions in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2245. History of Chinese examination system (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the theories and means of selecting men of talent, as well as the development of the examination system in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2246. Historical writings: texts and styles (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A close study of one or more of the following:

- (i) *Shiji*.
- (ii) *Hanshu*.
- (iii) *Hou Hanshu*.
- (iv) *Sanguozhi*.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2247. Local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the general characteristics and the compilation problems of local histories (*fangzhi*) and genealogical records (*zupu*) in pre-twentieth century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2251. Chinese philosophy I: Confucianism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the major philosophical texts and ideas of the Confucian tradition.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2252. Chinese philosophy II: Daoism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the major philosophical texts and ideas of the Daoist tradition.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2253. Chinese philosophy III: Buddhism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the main streams of Indian Buddhist thought and their development in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2254. Christianity and Chinese culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the history of Christianity in China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2255. Chinese intellectual history (Part I) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Qin-Han to the Sui-Tang period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2256. Chinese intellectual history (Part II) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the main intellectual trends in China from the Song period to the Qing period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2257. The development of Confucianism in late imperial China (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course deals with the development of Confucianism in China from late fourteenth century to early twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2258. The mentality of literati in Ming-Qing transition (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the milieu of the cataclysmic change of Heaven's Mandate in mid-seventeenth-century China and literati's feelings and responses to the change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2259. Historical writing and historiography in traditional China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores some important issues of historical writing and historiography in traditional China with reference to the development of historical writing, the organization of historiography institutes, and the influence of emperors on historiography.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2260. Readings in Chinese Buddhist texts (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The ability to read Buddhist texts is important for students in many fields: religion, philosophy, art history, literature, and so forth. The Chinese Buddhist canon, consisting of texts from the Eastern Han through the Qing dynasties, is very large in scope and full of a rich variety of scriptures, commentaries, rituals, and other types of materials. To read these valuable sources for the study of Chinese cultural history, however, one cannot rely simply on experience in reading Classical Chinese. One must also receive additional training in the special features of Buddhist Chinese. This course will emphasize close reading of different kinds of texts utilizing rigorous philological principles. Among the required readings are the following:



1. Biographies from Sengyou's *Chu sanzang ji ji*
  2. Popular tales from *Dizang Pusa benyuan jing*
  3. *Awakening of the Faith in the Mahayana*
  4. *The Platform Sutra of the Sixth Patriarch* (Dunhuang version)
  5. *The Diamond Sutra* (selections)
  6. *The Lotus Sutra* (selections)
- Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination.
- 

## GROUP C: TRANSLATION

### *First Year Courses*

#### **CHIN1311. Introduction to translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introduction to the theoretical and technical issues of translation, with guided practice in translating material of common occurrence.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

#### **CHIN1312. Language studies for translation I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This introductory course considers the distinctive characteristics of Chinese and English and aims at highlighting the mechanics of translation as a process of linguistic transfer. Emphasis will be placed on developing in the students a sensitivity towards the particular manners of behaviour of the two languages being reviewed.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

### *Second and Third Year Courses*

All courses listed below, if not otherwise specified, may be taken in either the second or the third year. Students opting for the Major are however required to take all the courses in List 1 in the years indicated, unless the Head of Department approves otherwise,

Second Year : CHIN2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316 (totalling 21 credits)

Third Year : CHIN2317, 2318, 2319, 2320 (totalling 18 credits),

and their remaining courses from List 2 in either the Second or the Third Year to make up at least 48 credits in two years.

Some of the courses require CHIN2335 or CHIN2336 as a prerequisite. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived by the Head of the Department.

[N.B. For the year 2002-03 the courses in Lists 1 and 2 are on offer to Second Year students only. They shall not be taken concurrently with Special Third Year Courses unless prior approval is obtained from the Head of Department.]

### **List 1**

#### **CHIN2311. Translation criticism I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator's competence and the merits of the selected translations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**CHIN2312. Translation criticism II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2313. Language studies for translation II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course considers the differences in grammar, semantics and pragmatics between Chinese and English, paying special attention to problems of translating in these areas.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2314. Translation in practice I (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides practical training in English-Chinese translation. Materials selected include both the literary and the non-literary. The weekly lectures will be accompanied by written exercises and tutorials.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2315. Translation in practice II (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course contains a critical element as well as a number of exercises in translation from Chinese into English. Texts of different stylistic types will be analysed, and the use of translation strategies for rendering such texts will be explored.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2316. Translation theory (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces leading theories in translation studies. Through studying on-going debates in the field, students will acquire a theoretical and methodological knowledge indispensable to the procedure and evaluation of translation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2317. Translation criticism III (English-Chinese) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism I. In this course, texts in different literary genres (poetry, the essay, the novel, drama) will be selected from English and American literature and discussed alongside their Chinese translations. Students will be trained to develop a critical approach in evaluating the translator's competence and the merits of the selected translations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**CHIN2318. Translation criticism IV (Chinese-English) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a sequel to Translation Criticism II. Selected literary translations in English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different translations of the same original text will be examined concurrently.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2319. Language studies for translation III: comparative stylistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course investigates the resources that lead to effective writing and serviceable translation. The objective is two-fold: to identify the variety of figures of speech such as metaphor, personification, parallelism and hyperbole commonly used in novels, prose, poetry and lyrics; and to consider the effects of these literary devices on the translation between English and Chinese.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**CHIN2320. Long translation (6 credits)**

The Long Translation project is an important part of the Translation degree. Its commencement is as early as the summer vacation between Years Two and Three when students are expected to find and decide on the texts for their translation. Close study of the chosen texts on the part of the students should occur in the vacation. From the beginning of the Third Year to about the end of March of the graduation year, the actual translation will be done by the student under the supervision of a teacher, in each case assigned by the teachers of Translation. The length of the translation should be about twenty pages; the nature of the writing, as literary or practical as the individual student prefers.

The condition for the selection of this course requires the student to be a Translation Major.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**List 2****CHIN2331. Choice of words in translation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a course specially planned for students who aspire to carve out for themselves a career in administration, publishing, advertising and journalism. Assuming no specific prior knowledge of linguistics, this course takes a new semantic approach to the analysis of different types of word meaning in a text. It addresses some key issues of a functional grammar pertaining to translation studies in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2332. Translation in Hong Kong society (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The basic aim of this course is to provide students who intend to become professional translators in Hong Kong with an overall view of translation as a communicative activity. The translators' work demands specialised knowledge of the ways translation functions in specific social contexts. The principal concern of this course is the practical information about the various circumstances in which translation serves its purpose as a communicative activity, either in the Government or in the private sector. This course will be assessed on the basis of a written seminar paper presented orally and participation in discussion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2333. Culture and translation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the cross-cultural dimension of translation. It examines the most complex cultural barriers faced by the translator – such as differences in the expression of emotions (for instance - love, anger, fear), codes of behaviour (for instance intimacy, privacy, politeness), values and world views, notions of gender, aesthetic taste, humour and forms of symbolism and metaphor.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2334. Power of speech in written translation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a course designed to teach both Translation and non-Translation students specific communication skills required for social interaction in a cosmopolitan city such as Hong Kong. 'Good communication behaviour' exhibited in bilingual texts is studied within the general framework of an Interpersonal Rhetoric model.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2335. Introduction to interpretation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to introduce to students the different forms of interpreting, i.e., sight translation, consecutive interpreting, and simultaneous interpreting, and to familiarise them with the basic skills and techniques essential for interpreting. Training will be focused on sight translation and consecutive interpreting between English and Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2336. Interpretation workshop I (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a continuation of Introduction to Interpretation. Students will be trained in sight translation and consecutive interpreting between English and Chinese on general and more specialised topics. Apart from training in note-taking skills, students will also be introduced to different environments for interpretation and the professional ethics of the interpreter.

Prerequisite: CHIN2335. Introduction to interpretation

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2337. Journalistic translation (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The primary focus of this course is the linguistic features and stylistic conventions of press material. Texts of various types from the mass media will be examined, and their generic characteristics identified. Students will familiarize themselves in this course with the basic techniques of news reporting and the skills needed to render press material from one language into another.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2338. Translation of promotional material (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Promotional material usually has a unique appeal that lies in the skilful manipulation of rhetorical devices. In this course their linguistic and stylistic characteristics will be studied, with emphasis on how best to translate the original into Chinese or English. Students will be provided with opportunities to examine the creative use of language and to improve their ability through training and regular practice to deal with different kinds of writing for advertizing products and services.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**CHIN2339. Translation for administration and business (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the role of translation in Hong Kong's public administration procedures, and how it is used by Hong Kong and Chinese business concerns in conducting international business. Students will practise translating papers related to negotiation, administration and the law arising from such contexts, and explore suitable translation techniques in the process.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2340. Film translation workshop (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Film-making today is becoming increasingly international, rendering translation almost indispensable to the industry. Translating films for dubbing and subtitling requires special skills distinct from those outside the field. This course concentrates on such skills, emphasizing audio-visual awareness and cinematic elements such as drama, dialogue, vernacular, and pacing. Students learn through group projects and the hands-on translation of feature films.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2341. Translating writings on art (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course students will have the opportunity to practise translating from Chinese to English and vice-versa within the field of art history, art appreciation and art criticism. Writings on Chinese and western art, such as those published by museums and art galleries, will be used as study texts, and translation skills and strategies will be discussed to enable students to build up bilingual vocabulary and linguistic expressions for describing Chinese and western works of art in specific historical, social, cultural and aesthetic contexts.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**CHIN2342. Interpretation workshop II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a continuation of Interpretation Workshop I. It aims at providing students with training in consecutive interpreting on specialized topics ranging from political speeches and addresses at meetings on a variety of topics to court proceedings. This course will also provide training in the essential skills and techniques for simultaneous interpreting, including shadowing, rephrasing, memory retention, abstraction and the cultivation of split attention.

Prerequisite: CHIN2336. Interpretation Workshop I

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

***Special Third Year Courses***

[Courses on offer to current Third Year students who have completed CHIN2301-2304 under the old Translation curriculum.]

**CHIN3301. Translation criticism II (6 credits)**

Select literary translations in Chinese and English will be analyzed in terms of the specific problems encountered in the process of translating. In some cases, different versions of the same original text will be studied in comparative terms.

Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

---

**CHIN3302. Advanced language studies for translation II (6 credits)**

A continuation of CHIN2302, including a contrastive study of the Chinese and English languages, and an examination of language styles and language use for special purposes, the emphasis being on the study of styles both as a problem of translation and as a part of the language skills essential to translators.

Assessment: 25% coursework, 75% examination.

---

**CHIN3303. Translation for special purposes (6 credits)**

A general survey of the problems and techniques of translating for the media and civil service, and for legal and commercial purposes, with practice (including a Long Translation Project) in translating between Chinese and English.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

---

**CHIN3304. Oral translation (6 credits)**

The main emphasis of this course is on the training in consecutive interpretation. A small number of exercises in simultaneous interpretation will also be included. The pre-recorded texts in Chinese and English are, in the main, on current affairs. There will be drills on note-taking, shadowing, abstracting, sight translating, and the translating of numbers. The improvement of the student's oral skills in general and oral English in particular will be among the aims of this course.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**GROUP D: DISSERTATION*****Third Year Course*****CHIN3401. Dissertation (12 credits)**

A short dissertation will be written on a subject approved by the supervisor and the Department. This course is only open to students majoring in the Department of Chinese.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**ASSESSMENT**

Coursework assessment will be based on performance in tutorials and seminars, and on the strength of essays and such other exercises as can be assessed continually.

Each course will be examined by a written paper of not more than 2-hour duration except those courses which are assessed by 100% coursework. The course CHIN3304. Oral translation will be examined orally.

## COGNITIVE SCIENCE

### COGN1001. Introduction to cognitive science (6 credits)

This course allows students to gain an understanding of the workings of the mind in the context of the technological advances that are increasingly shaping our lives and our society. The course introduces students to the domain, goals and methods of Cognitive Science, showing how different disciplines converge in their enquiry into how the brain works. With integration as the overall objective, there will be a series of lectures given by specialists within each of the major disciplines (Computer Science and Information Systems, Linguistics, Philosophy, Physiology and Psychology) that contribute to Cognitive Science. Each series of lectures will present case studies highlighting research findings which show how similar questions about the functioning of the human mind are answered from the perspective of each contributing discipline.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

## COMPARATIVE LITERATURE

If we do not study other cultures, we cannot even understand our own. In the Department, we study literature from a broad range of international and interdisciplinary perspectives, and in relation to other forms of cultural expression.

The department offers courses in literary, theoretical and cultural studies using cross-cultural materials and interdisciplinary approaches. Some of the main areas covered include Visual Cultures and Film Studies, Cross-Cultures: Literature and Theory, Feminism and Gender Studies, Postcolonial/Hong Kong/China Studies, and New Media and Global Studies.

Our courses study a wide range of texts in terms of both form and content. Students learn to read culture in the broadest sense – analyzing literary texts, films, fashion magazines, cyber texts, advertisements, comics, popular music, and other relevant cultural productions and practices.

Such an approach provides a focus for significant interdisciplinary study in the Humanities and a training in thinking about the nature of the relationship between culture and society. The direction of interest is indicated in the description of each course.

Texts are studied in English, though texts in Chinese are used in Cross-Cultural studies and Hong Kong/Chinese cultural studies.

Courses are open to students who have fulfilled the University's entrance requirements, though priority will usually be given to students with a Grade C or above in the Use of English examination, or who otherwise show special aptitude.

In order to major in Comparative Literature first year students must normally take at least two of the 6-credit first year courses offered by the Department. In the second and third years, students must select not less than eight 6-credit courses or equivalent from among those offered by the Department. There are no particular requirements in terms of core courses and course combinations.

All courses offered in the Department will be examined by 100% continuous assessment. Course organisers will provide details of assessment at the beginning of their course. **All specific course descriptions will be provided in the departmental handbook and can be downloaded from our website: [www.hku.hk/complit/courses.htm](http://www.hku.hk/complit/courses.htm).**

## Syllabus

### *First-year Courses*

The department's first year programme consists of courses introducing the students to cross-cultural and trans-disciplinary perspectives on comparative literary, cultural and visual studies. Students may take up to four courses.

**CLIT1001. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies I: Film studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will introduce students to the techniques and practice of film through the study of a historically and culturally varied range of cinematic productions. Both international and local cinema will be studied. The aim of the course is to enable students to read the language of film.

---

**CLIT1002. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies II: Gender studies (6 credits)**

Feminism, gender and sexuality, masculinity and femininity – indeed, even what we mean by “men” and “women” – are all areas of contemporary debate and always topical. This course introduces you to the subject of Comparative Literature by introducing the issues, which will remain important throughout your three years’ study. We will look at what is meant by “gender” through critical readings of some crucial texts, and we will support examination of these texts by reference to some critical theories.

---

**CLIT1003. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies III: Digital culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Information technology nowadays has become such an encompassing cultural phenomenon that no one, not even the avowed technophobe, can ignore it. For a university student, competency in computer technology does not guarantee that she/he can comprehend the theoretical implications of the new technology. Against this backdrop, the present course aims at providing students with an up-to-date overview of the technology-imbued society that we live in. Although the course is based upon literary and cultural approaches, it is also designed to be beneficial to students majoring in other disciplines. Advanced knowledge of computer technology is not a prerequisite for this course. Instead, students can take advantage of the workshop sessions to learn of refine their skills in web surfing, web-related research, and the design of simple web-sites.

***This course meets the University’s IT requirement.***

---

**CLIT1004. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies IV: Colonial and postcolonial culture – Hong Kong and beyond (6 credits)**

The course explores the importance of the cultural representations of colonizer and colonized in forming the way we imagine the world today. Through film, fiction and other texts, the students will study colonial practices, and the responses of the colonized. Hong Kong, China and Chinese people will form an integral part of the course.



**CLIT1005. Introduction to comparative literary and cultural studies V: Disney and global capital (6 credits)**

Disney is the name of an American business, and a world-wide phenomenon which is now coming to Hong Kong. Disney's animated feature films, starting with *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs* (1937) and *Pinocchio* (1940) and *Fantasia* (1940) through to *The Lion King* (1994), *Pocahontas* (1995) and *Mulan* (1998) have dominated cinema through their spectacle and visual pleasure as well as through the songs and the soundtrack. The trend in the latest Disney films has been to deal with subjects from outside America – Africa, China, or America's Amerindian population. Disney theme-parks, whether in Los Angeles or Florida, or Paris or Tokyo – and now Hong Kong raise the question of how much Disney has been responsible for globalization – and for making globalization the same as Americanization.

In this course, we will look at the Disney films and cartoon characters as examples of American ideology and of the presentation of the American way of life; we will analyse how the pleasure that they give works; we will look at Walt Disney as the originator of a business corporation and at the politics of global capitalism; we will ask how to read a Disney film, and examine what globalization means in the context of different Disney theme-parks.

***Second- and Third-year Courses***

Students taking eight or more 6-credit courses in the department must normally have taken at least two of the First-year courses or the equivalent. The following courses - or from time to time other courses - will be offered, as teaching arrangements permit.

**Part II courses** have Part I as a prerequisite, except with the consent of the lecturer.

***Second or Third Year***

**CLIT2001. Comparative studies in narrative fiction: reading narrative (6 credits)**

This is the first of two courses on narrative, and students are encouraged to take both parts, though this is not essential.

What is narrative, and is it possible to think without using narrative? How do different narratives emerge and how do they intersect with ideology - with other discourses circulating in society (what postmodernism calls 'metanarratives')? How do the narratives of men and women vary? Is narrative always confessional in character, especially when it is autobiographical? What happens to prose narrative when it becomes film? What does Derrida mean when he accuses narrative of being the power of the police? What would a text be like that was anti-narrative? Focusing on short fiction texts and short stories, the course aims to discuss a number of different narrative texts, from widely different periods, to read them closely, and to confront some of the questions asked above.

**CLIT2002. Comparative studies in narrative fiction: reading novels (6 credits)**

The course will look at four texts derived from the European tradition of narrative fiction, and will re-read these in the light of narrative theory, but aiming also to put the texts into fresh contexts for students.

**CLIT2003. Modern European drama: drama and the modern subject (6 credits)**

The course is one of two that may be taken together or singly. In the first, we read plays by Ibsen, Strindberg and Chekhov, and by Shakespeare, Calderón and Racine, to look at the way in which drama looks at the history of the modern subject.

**CLIT2004. Modern European drama: drama, carnival and comedy (6 credits)**

In this course, which continues from the first Drama course, and which thinks of 'modern drama' as linked with the history of the modern subject from the sixteenth-century onwards, we examine texts by Shakespeare, Aphra Behn and Moliere, Brecht, Beckett, and Heiner Muller to look at ways in which drama contests the single subject position.

---

**CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory I (6 credits)**

This course is aimed at introducing some basic concepts of contemporary Western literary and cultural theory. We will examine the postmodern polemics against truth and objectivity, and see how this is related to our reading of literary and cultural texts.

---

**CLIT2006. Literary and cultural theory II (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of CLIT2005.

---

**CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the construction of meaning in cinema and the development of film language. It first investigates the major structural components of the narrative film text, such as narrative structure, *mise-en-scène*, the camera eye, editing and sound, then proceeds to introduce the major cinematic movements in film history and discuss some film classics in relation to the topics covered.

---

**CLIT2008. Film culture II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course seeks to investigate critical methodologies for reading film texts with a particular emphasis on psychoanalytic, feminist, and postcolonial theories. The approach will be cross-cultural and inter-disciplinary. Film texts will be examined in relation to questions of gender, sexual difference, sexuality, and subjectivity. The films to be examined may include some Hollywood classics as well as Asian melodramas.

---

**CLIT2013. Feminist cultural studies I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the writings of some major contemporary feminists and their critical analysis of the construction of the images and roles of women. Cross-cultural materials taken from both print and non-print media will be used to illustrate feminist issues.

---

**CLIT2014. Feminist cultural studies II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Using cross-cultural materials, this course explores the relation of women to popular cultural productions and practices such as shopping, reading gossip columns, romantic fiction and films, TV soap opera and others.

**CLIT2016. The body in culture (6 credits)**

This course will explore various theoretical approaches as we attempt to develop discourses to address the notion of 'the body'. There will be an emphasis on issues of corporeal identity, movement, and performance. We will present and discuss texts from the fields of philosophy, critical theory, psychoanalysis, architecture, literature, dance, theatre, film/media studies, gender studies, anthropology, technology, science, performance art, and cultural studies. Participants will develop their own projects in a medium of their choice (writing, visual art, video, performance, internet, interactive technology/cd-rom, etc.). These projects will not only present and elaborate upon the chosen concepts and topics, but also examine theoretically the medium in which they are presented. Specific foci of discussion will be based on participants' interests.

---

**CLIT2017. A new introduction to modernism (6 credits)**

This course attempts to rethink the concept of modernism by looking at as many different forms that it took (literary, filmic, musical and artistic), and interrogating its politics, its relationship to bourgeois culture, its gender-bias, its view of past and traditional and non-traditional texts, and its place in critical theory. In the light of what remains of 'postmodernism,' it asks how the term 'modernism' is now to be read.

---

**CLIT2018. Critiques of modernity (6 credits)**

This course will examine cultural critiques of, and reflections upon, modernity and its consequences in 'the West' and the non-West (primarily China) over the past century or so. While the course will be informed by theoretical consideration of capitalist modernity and 'alternative' modernities, the central texts discussed will be primary cultural texts that are foregrounded within their specific cultural contexts by the acuity and consciousness of their critique of modernity. Texts will be read as a metacommentary on modernity's contradictions.

---

**CLIT2019. Studies in American culture: film genre (6 credits)**

This course will explore the basic Hollywood genres including the western, the gangster film, the detective story, the road film, and film noir. Various approaches will be used to elucidate their rich contextual meanings. Among these are psychoanalysis, myth-making, structuralism and feminism, as well as topics in social history and literature. It will cover the development of the West and the rise of urban culture. Screenings will include the Western, the Gangster Film and the Detective Film.

---

**CLIT2020. Studies in American culture: contemporary cinema (6 credits)**

This course will cover the Post-War period and the various cultural revolutions of the 1960s. Screenings will include Film Noir, the Road Movie and new genre film.

---

**CLIT2021. Reading the nineteenth-century: revolution, romanticism and realism (6 credits)**

This course is one of two looking at the nineteenth-century in Europe and America through a reading of its texts: novels, poetry, painting, music, philosophical speculation, and psychoanalysis. Both courses are complete in themselves, but make best sense taken together. The first part looks at texts from the time of the French Revolution (1789) on to the Great Exhibition of 1851 - the triumph of bourgeois culture and of consumption over revolutionary aspiration.

**CLIT2022. Reading the nineteenth-century: reaction and modernity (6 credits)**

This is the second of two courses reading texts from the nineteenth-century. Fastening on the three 'masters of suspicion' in the nineteenth-century - Marx, Nietzsche, Freud - it reads the triumph of realism and of bourgeois culture, and examines ways in which this culture was critiqued. Teaching will look at literary texts drawn from European cultures - Russia, France, Germany, Britain, and America.

---

**CLIT2023. Heterologies: the discourse of the other (6 credits)**

'Heterology' is 'the science of what is completely other'. It, and the course, looks at a range of ways in which the 'other' appears in literary texts - as the colonial savage, as mad, as mystic, as criminal, as sexually deviant, or in relation to fascism.

---

**CLIT2024. Reading comedy: Dante and Boccaccio (6 credits)**

There are two texts derived from the Italian Renaissance to be used for this course: Dante's *Comedy*, which divides into three - *Inferno*, *Purgatory* and *Paradise*, and Boccaccio's *Decameron*. These are crucially important and formative texts, the second a response to the first, which deserve re-reading both in order to confront texts of the past, and in the light of contemporary theoretical approaches from new historicism, from feminism, from work on the body and on sexuality and the city. We will examine the new forms of narrative that emerged with the urban and bourgeois culture of fourteenth-century Florence, with its new attention to the subject as individual and as communal. Above all, we will be considering what is meant by 'comedy' and why both Dante and Boccaccio work within its terms.

---

**CLIT2025. Visual cultures (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

It has often been said that ours is pre-eminently a culture of the visual, a 'Society of the Spectacle'. This course introduces students to one of the key developments in cultural theory today: a study of how visual cultures are formed, and how they inform the ways we see, feel and think. There is indeed 'an optical unconscious' made up of the criss-crossings of desire, ideology and reproductive technologies (or Freud, Marx and SONY), which manifests itself from ephemeral fashions to the permanencies of architecture. What the course will focus on, however, are specific examples of changes and innovations in visual culture found in art, photography, cinema, architecture, video, and urban life; and in particular, all the examples of visual material that problematize visuality. We will also attempt to draw out the implications of such problematic visualities for critical and cultural theory.

---

**CLIT2026. Digital culture and new media technologies I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the interactions between contemporary critical and cultural theory and digital culture. We will discuss theoretical and compositional approaches in the work of international new media artists (via World Wide Web, CD-ROM, video, exhibition and slide formats as available), and create new media projects ourselves, in order to expose possible modes of critical interpretation and creation for these media. Issues of identity construction, gender, corporeal vs. psychic presence, interactivity, bodily motion and motion capture, community, interface, performativity, and representation will be addressed.

**CLIT2027. Digital culture and new media technologies II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a continuation of Digital Culture I.

---

**CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

If contemporary cities are becoming more 'invisible', it is because the effects they have upon us are indirect and displaced. Our experience of cities becomes more problematic as cities themselves become more complex. This course explores the changing cultural space of cities mainly through major works of fiction and of cinema, though it will include other forms like painting and architecture as well as theoretical texts. Topics for discussion include: How is urban experience transformed by colonialism/imperialism, technology, information? What are 'world cities' and 'third world cities', cybercities and colonial cities? Is Hong Kong a 'Chinese city'? How can the city be read as a cultural text?

---

**CLIT2031. Fashion theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Fashion lies somewhere between 'art' and 'consumption', and for mysterious reasons (according to historian Eric Hobsbawm) often anticipates future cultural tendencies better than both. We will discuss the relation of fashion to art, media, spectacles, and marketing; to questions of identity and self-fashioning; to images of the body and ideas of femininity and masculinity; to notions of style and anti-style (e.g. jeans as degree zero fashion); to looking and having 'the look'. Throughout, the focus will be on the surprising impact of fashion on culture, particularly contemporary culture.

---

**CLIT2034. Advanced film theory (6 credits)**

Adaptations from literature to film provide an extremely fertile ground for a) exploring the different possibilities of the two media involved and b) cross-cultural studies. Why is Kurosawa so obsessed by Shakespeare? Bresson has adapted Dostoevsky, and everybody has had a go at *War and Peace*. Are they successful and why? We will try to answer these questions through a comparative study of the original texts and the films. Students will also be encouraged to adapt their favorite short story or novel into film-scripts as an exercise.

---

**CLIT2035. Writing madness (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Drawing on recent critical theory, the course will use both texts which have been described as mad, including those by Sylvia Plath, Charlotte Gilman, Holderlin, Blake, and Artaud; as well as look at representations of madness, e.g. in the writings of Gogol, Lu Xun, Dostoyevsky, and Henry James, or in films like *Psycho* or *Seven*. It will ask whether it is possible to think of writing a history of madness, without misrepresenting madness as 'other.' It will also distinguish between melancholia and manic states, hysteria and schizophrenia, while recognising that these terms themselves, instrumental in the construction of madness, are part of the problem.

**CLIT2037. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film: I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces some representative works in contemporary Chinese literature around the ideas of gender and sexuality. We will examine contemporary Chinese literature against the background of China's recent reform and question the political significance of China's gender politics.

---

**CLIT2038. Gender and sexuality in contemporary Chinese literature and film: II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of CLIT2037. It examines contemporary Chinese film around the idea of gender and sexuality.

---

**CLIT2042. Reading confessing (6 credits)**

The objective of this course is to examine the relationship between literature and confession by examining some important works of literature produced in the West and the East. The nature and significance of the discourse of confession and how it inflects literary textuality is central to the purpose of this course.

---

**CLIT2043. Reading the empire of the senses: Japan in contemporary culture (6 credits)**

Technologically and economically, Japan is the most advanced country in Asia. At the same time it is one of the most traditional. Japan is at once modern and traditional, forward-looking and backward-looking, cosmopolitan and parochial, innovative and conservative, creative and derivative, other-directed and inner directed. The aim of the course is to explore the enigma, that is Japan, by focusing on its cultural productions - literature, cinema, popular culture, advertising, television, comics, rituals, etc. By examining diverse cultural texts we plan to undermine the easy generalizations and ubiquitous stereotypes that pass for cultural analysis and acquire a more complex and nuanced understanding of the national cultural space of Japan.

---

**CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism I (6 credits)**

In this course, we will study the very diverse representations Europeans make of non-European peoples, ranging from the idealized 'noble savage' to the barbaric and degenerate other. We will examine these images in travel narratives, philosophical treatises, fiction, paintings, photos, and films.

---

**CLIT2046. Colonialism/postcolonialism II (6 credits)**

This course, a continuation of part I, examines problems that arose after political decolonization. Some of the topics we will explore are: relation between modernity and tradition, postcolonial identities, multiculturalism, postcolonial rewriting and the question of return. All these issues will be examined from a comparative perspective. Besides theoretical texts, we will use fiction and films from different postcolonial groups.

**CLIT2047. Cultures of the imagination: Disney and the world (6 credits)**

Disney is a worldwide phenomenon that is coming to Hong Kong. Although most people think of it as a premier example of 'globalization as Americanization', each of the sites has responded in different ways to 'Disneyfication'. The course will look at how Disney theme parks, cartoons, films, and commercial products create new kinds of 'social imaginaries'. The course will focus on the Hong Kong debates over the Disney project, and will compare local issues with those raised in Orlando, Paris, and Tokyo.

---

**CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)**

When Michael Jordan becomes the most popular sports figure in Mainland China and South Africa, does this mean that we are all becoming more alike? Or are we splitting apart, as the rise of new nationalisms in Yugoslavia and India would seem to indicate? Why has rap music become globally popular? This course will look at a variety of contemporary phenomena from pop culture to nationalism in terms of the global processes of circulation and transformation that are changing the world we live in. Special attention will be paid to Hong Kong culture and its changing role in Asia and the world.

---

**CLIT2051. Jane Austen and popular culture (6 credits)**

This course will read Jane Austen's novels through the visual medium of television series, film adaptations and the internet. It will consider the successful translation of Austen from high to popular and to global cultural form. It will study the ways in which her novels have been re-invented to reflect issues of contemporary importance such as feminism with its critique of marriage and masculinity and its call for more open expression of desire and sexuality. It will historicize this revision by analyzing the status of women, the role of the family and the importance of courtship in Austen's original novels.

---

**CLIT2052. Chinese urban culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

With specific reference to major Chinese cities, for example Beijing, Shanghai, Taipei, and Hong Kong, the course is designed to examine how forces of modernization, colonialism and globalization have drastically transformed these cities. It explores problems of urban culture and the changing meaning of 'Chineseness' through major works of fiction, cinema, architecture and other relevant cultural texts. Although no prerequisites are required, students are advised to study CLIT2028 The City as Cultural Text before taking this course.

---

**CLIT2053. Special topic I (6 credits)**

The course is designed to teach the work of a single writer or film director, presenting it in detail and drawing relevant comparisons with texts and works of other authors. Or it may examine in great depth a special and focused topic in literary and cultural studies. The content of this course therefore will change from year to year.

---

**CLIT2054. Special topic II (6 credits)**

The course is designed to teach the work of a single writer or film director, presenting it in detail and drawing relevant comparisons with texts and works of other authors. Or it may examine in great depth a special and focused topic in literary and cultural studies. The content of this course therefore will change from year to year.

**CLIT2055. Cultures of capitalism I: Money and everyday life (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Most of us think of money as an economic fact. Yet it is also a cultural phenomenon that penetrates all parts of everyday life and produces feelings as different as greed and charity. This course will look at how people talk, write, and feel about money. The goal of the course is to give students a sense of the variety of meanings of money, from its role in tipping and gift-giving, to gambling, speculation, and frauds. Students will be asked to draw materials from everyday life, movies, short stories, newspapers, and other media. The course has no background requirements and is not a prerequisite for the second semester.

---

**CLIT2056. Cultures of capitalism II: Modernity and post-modernity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Most of us think of capitalism as primarily an economic phenomenon. Yet it is also has a profoundly cultural dimension that involves culturally specific views of risk taking, speculation, and even money and capital. This course will provide an introduction to some of the classic works on capitalism, including Marx and Simmel, and then explore contemporary phenomena such as land speculation and the stock market. This is not an introductory course in economics, but it will look at how people portray capitalism in movies, novels, newspapers, and other media. Students will be expected to do a research paper based upon Hong Kong materials.

---

**CLIT2057. Carnival versus tragedy: Reading renaissance culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course looks at how we can read the 'early modern' period in Europe – from the fifteenth century (the period of planning the ideal city and designing the ideal body, of the development of the printed book and of the colonization of America) to the seventeenth centuries. It uses the twin concepts of carnival and tragedy to look at the theatre, at representations of the body, monstrous and grotesque, and for an examination of state power and resistances to it. Texts include works by Machiavelli, Rabelais, Shakespeare and Racine.

---

**CLIT2058. Histories of sexuality: Freud and Foucault (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course compares the theoretical approaches of Freud to Foucault to sexuality – a history of repression versus a history of the production of the subject – by looking at a number of literary and cultural texts whose interest for us is how they make problematic and fascinating either theory of the subject.

---

**CLIT2059. Feminine roles and cultural myths (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will begin with 'liminal' works which chart a traumatic rite of passage for women from childhood to adulthood or suggest that there might be a dynamic interplay between the two states. It will focus, in particular, on texts in which women directly challenge prevailing social myths of human development, family organization, and sexual relations. It will be especially interested in texts which proceed to deconstruct the social codes governing women, their relationships, and scope for defining and expressing themselves.



**CLIT2060. Fiction and film in contemporary Chinese societies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies modern Chinese culture as it is expressed and understood in contemporary stories and films. It aims to explore relationships between narrative arts and society. It also examines literature and film in relation to each other, as well as literary and aesthetic theories, themes, genres and expressive modes.

---

**CLIT2061. Narratives of the past in contemporary culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Organized around different kinds of narrative of the past in contemporary culture, this course raises basic questions about historical representation: What is 'history'? How is it differentiated from 'memory' and 'nostalgia'? In what way is a spatial critique of culture pertinent to the study of historical representation? With reference to a range of texts such as literature, film, museum narratives, architecture and music from different cultures, the course explores the politics and poetics of historical representation in contemporary societies. Topics for discussion may include: tensions between official history and personal memory, different styles and forms of imagining and narrating history, and the role of the media and other cultural means such as oral narratives in the mediation of 'history'.

---

**CLIT2062. Media culture I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

'Cinema and the City' - Through a wide range of international films (including Hong Kong films), the course will examine how cinematic images allow us to experience and understand the events that transform the contemporary city.

---

**CLIT2063. Media culture II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

'Cinema and Culture' - The course will examine cinema as an art form which reflects world cultures. The primary emphasis will be on film makers and their creative works. Motion pictures which have made an impact on twentieth century views of culture will be analyzed. It is expected that students will have had some previous experience in film appreciation, aesthetics or history, and a basic knowledge of the grammar of the film medium.

---

**CLIT2064. Hong Kong culture: Popular culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explores the various aspects of popular culture in Hong Kong from the perspective of Cultural Studies. Major media and other popular forms of expression to be discussed include: television, radio, newspapers and popular magazines, popular music, popular literature, cartoons, youth, and fan culture. Theories of Cultural Studies will be introduced and discussed in relation to critical readings of such texts in order to expand the students' horizons in understanding and interpreting Hong Kong popular culture.

**CLIT2065. Hong Kong culture: Representations of identity in literature and film (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This course traces the formation of identities in Hong Kong history and analyzes different perspectives in understanding these identities. It focuses on various forms of colonization and their influences on the construction of cultural artifacts and relationships. Various theoretical approaches and debates on postcolonialism, capitalism, and urban culture will be adopted to examine selected texts of literature and film.

---

**CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

We are constantly bombarded with images by the media day and night. MTV is equally popular in the developed as well as in the developing countries. The old distinction between high culture and popular culture is breaking down. Literature and film genres are being constantly mixed, resulting in composite and hybrid works. More and more Hong Kong Chinese live in Toronto, Melbourne, London and San Francisco while more and more Filipinos come to Hong Kong as housemaids. The postmodern world is full of fascinating phenomena. In this course we plan to study postmodernism by focusing on literature, cinema, art, and other cultural productions. The aim of the course is not to define postmodernism but rather to evoke and question it as we seek to make sense of the radical changes taking place in ideas and experiences related to technology, entertainment, art, everyday life and the problems of representation.

---

**CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)**

This course 'replaces' Shakespeare not by removing his work from the agenda, but by reconsidering his place in contemporary criticism and popular cultural practice. Some of the topics the course may deal with are: feminist, psychoanalytic and literary historicist re-readings of Shakespeare's texts; comparisons of how international film directors, with their differing multi-cultural percepts, have handled the problems of filming Shakespeare; and the way that Shakespeare has been adapted and re-imagined by innovative and influential modern artists.

---

**CLIT2068. Gender dialogue in Maxine Hong Kingston: An intertextual study of *The Woman Warrior* and *China Men* (6 credits)**

Maxine Hong Kingston herself admitted that *The Woman Warrior* and *China Men* were first conceived as one big saga. In the end, however, she created two distinct narratives of the Chinese women and men who made Hong Family history. Her stated rationale for this was that "my men's stories were weakening the feminist point of view. So I took all the men's stories out, and then I had *The Woman Warrior*. Yet this reinforcement of "the feminist point of view" created gender imbalance in her texts. It focused critical attention on *The Woman Warrior*, and allowed women readers, in particular, to ignore the fact that *China Men* was written as a sequel to *The Woman Warrior* or as volume two of her family saga. It has provoked a literary battle of the sexes and led some Chinese American male critics to conclude that Hong Kingston's writing emasculates *China Men* either by cutting them out of the women's stories or by representing them as effeminate and powerless in their own narratives. This course aims to subvert this gender polarity by reading *The Woman Warrior* and *China Men* back into more integral relationship to one another. It will consider theories of intertextuality that suggest a dynamic interplay between the two books and that open up the possibility of gender dialogue and a more inclusive exchange of views. It will look at intertexts from high and popular culture that can help readers to understand the overall significance of the two books and that represent men and women as co-producers of meaning. These may include (in whole or part) Nathaniel Hawthorne's *The Scarlet Letter*, Virginia Woolf's *Orlando*, William Carlos Williams's *In the American Grain*, Lucille Ball's "I Love Lucy" show, and the films *Crouching Tigers and Hidden Dragons* and *The Matrix*.

**CLIT2069. The making of modern masculinities (6 credits)**

Using cross-cultural materials taken from a wide range of media such as films, fiction, magazines, paintings, TV and advertising, this course engages in a multidisciplinary study of the formation of different types of masculinities in the modern world.

---

**CLIT2070. Heidegger and everydayness (6 credits)**

As one of the most important Western thinkers of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, Heidegger addresses fundamental questions of human existence in ways that speak directly to our everyday experiences. For instance, why do we sometimes feel that life is meaningless, and how do we try to avoid this feeling? This course will introduce you to some of Heidegger's core ideas through a study of his masterpiece *Being and Time*, which has had a profound impact not only on philosophy but also on literary theory. Students will learn both about Heidegger and the intellectual traditions he challenged.

---

**CLIT2071. Introduction to cultural studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What are the defining texts which see culture as inherently problematic, and which ask us how we can read the texts of 'high culture'? This course will look at those founding texts which have encouraged critical reading of cultural texts and will ask how they coincide with moments of cultural and political crisis. It will help give a sense of what is meant by studying literature through cultural studies.

---

**CLIT2072. Deconstruction (6 credits)**

This course examines the method of deconstruction around such issues as truth, power, subjectivity, modernity, postmodernity, and so on. Readings include texts by Derrida himself and by some other thinkers (e.g. Nietzsche, J. L. Austin, Habermas).

---

***Third Year*****CLIT3003. Chinese modernism (6 credits)**

This course studies the various responses to modernism in the socio-cultural context of twentieth-century China. With examples from selected works of poetry, fiction and drama, it will study issues such as the relationships between modernisation and literary modernity, modernism and mass culture, modernism and history, modernism and Marxism.

---

**CLIT3004. East Asian and Western fiction: crisis and modernization (6 credits)**

This comparative East-West course will examine the relation between major cultural crises and problems of modernization as revealed in representative twentieth-century works of fiction. It will analyse the writers' efforts to re-authenticate individual and social meanings and actions in an urban, industrial society which tends to deprive the individual of cultural memories.

**CLIT3005. Cultural Marxism I (6 credits)**

This course will aim to historicize and contextualize within a comparative frame the elaboration of Marxist cultural/aesthetic theory over the last century and a half. In this course the intersection of moments, spaces, and concerns of Marxist cultural theory and practice will be central. The reception and development of Marxist aesthetic theory in West and Central Europe, in Russia, and in China will be analysed. Texts will be read in English and Chinese.

---

**CLIT3006. Cultural Marxism II (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of Part I.

---

**CLIT3007. Advanced studies in digital culture (6 credits)**

This course will examine theories of digital culture and attempt to develop visions for the theory and practice of life in the digital age. We will explore issues of gender and sexualities, memory, motion, speed vs. slowness, space, and community, through readings of cultural theory, visual theory, digital theory, and fiction. Film, video, multimedia, and websites will form an integral part of the material to be examined. Prerequisite: Introduction to Digital Culture, and/or Digital Culture and New Media Technologies.

---

**CLIT3008. Literature and philosophy (6 credits)**

The course asks whether literature is really philosophy and whether philosophy can be literature. While it explores specific texts such as *Phaedrus* and *The Symposium* which may be called either, its main focus is on Romanticism. Through a detailed consideration of the conjunctions of literature and philosophy in the English and German Romantics, it asks how each mode of writing contests and complements the claims of the other.

---

**CLIT3013. Critiques of space (6 credits)**

'Space' has become a focal point of discussion in many different disciplines ranging from sociology, urban studies and architecture to literature, philosophy, cinema, and gender studies. The course will present - by means of films, writings, photographs, and other speculative media - the spatial issues that affect our contemporary experience of the city and our understanding of the culture and politics of the globalizing world.

---

**CLIT3014. Traumatic events (6 credits)**

This course will observe the workings of trauma (the enactment and working-through of collective and individual symptoms of trauma), memory, and witnessing in various modes of everyday life. We will examine notions of catastrophe, disaster, accident, and violence, and explore the possibilities and impossibilities of bearing witness in many forms of cultural production. We will examine the representation of traumatic events in fiction, poetry, architecture, critical theory, visual art, philosophy, science, cartoons, film, video, television reportage, newspaper documentation, and performance, on the internet and World Wide Web, and in the public and domestic spaces of Hong Kong.

---

**CLIT3018. Walter Benjamin as writer and cultural critic (6 credits)**

The course is an introduction to the seminal work of Walter Benjamin. His essays - on literature, translation, photography and film, culture and politics, the experience of cities - develop a theory of reading and a style of argument that are indispensable to the understanding of contemporary cultural debates.

## COMPUTER SCIENCE AND INFORMATION SYSTEMS

### *Introduction*

The Department of Computer Science and Information Systems has a long tradition of offering information technology courses as service or elective courses to students in other departments. All these courses are of 6 credits. Each course will be taught in a single semester with 3 to 4 hours of lectures per week. The assessment will be based on a written examination and in-course assessment.

Depending on the availability of teachers and the demands, we might not be able to offer the entire set of courses every year. Based on the current practice, CSIS0911 will definitely and CSIS0912 and CSIS0913 will most likely be offered yearly. Among the Applications courses, we plan to offer two to three per year. There is no A-level Mathematics pre-requisite for CSIS0901 and CSIS0911.

---

### *The Courses*

#### **Literacy:**

- CSIS0901 - Computer concepts and applications

#### **Computing Fundamentals:**

- CSIS0911 - Computer concepts and programming
- CSIS0912 - Data structures and program design
- CSIS0913 - Computer organization and operating systems

#### **Applications:**

- CSIS0921 - Database management and design
- CSIS0922 - Introduction to computer graphics
- CSIS0923 - Multimedia systems and applications
- CSIS0924 - Internet and E-commerce
- CSIS0925 - Business information systems
- CSIS0926 - Information technology and society

CSIS0911 is a prerequisite for all the other courses in the Computing Fundamentals and Applications areas.

---

### *Course Descriptions*

Unless otherwise specified, the examination for each course is one three-hour written paper and the final grading will be determined by performance in the examination and in-course assessment in the ratio of 60:40.

#### **First Year or Level 100**

##### **CSIS0901. Computer concepts and applications (6 credits)**

This course introduces the basic concepts, essential vocabulary, and major themes of computing; and presents an overview of the application of computing in various domains. Major topics include: computer hardware and software, operating systems and networks, programming languages, Internet and World Wide Web, e-commerce, database and information retrieval, graphics, multimedia systems, artificial intelligence, etc.

*Prerequisite:* none

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

**CSIS0911. Computer concepts and programming (6 credits)**

This course introduces the basic computing concepts and the art of computer programming. Major topics include: basic concepts and vocabulary of computers, techniques for the design and construction of computer programs, use of a high-level language and standard libraries to solve problems over a wide range of applications, etc.

*Prerequisite:* none

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**CSIS0912. Data structures and program design (6 credits)**

This course gives the appreciation of various types of data structures and algorithms that are commonly used in software development. Program design methodologies are also introduced. Major topics include: data structures of dynamic arrays, linked lists, stacks, queues and trees, algorithms of search, sorting, and recursion, object-oriented design and programming methodologies using classes, inheritance and virtual functions, containers and templates.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**Second/Third Year or Level 200/300****CSIS0913. Computer organization and operating systems (6 credits)**

This course introduces the key hardware and software components of a computer system and their organization. These components include CPU, main memory, secondary storages, I/O and communication devices, process scheduler, virtual memory, I/O system, file system, etc.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**CSIS0921. Database management and design (6 credits)**

This course covers the foundations necessary to design and implement a database, and to use a database management system effectively. The database approaches are introduced and major models are reviewed. Current ideas and tools are discussed and practiced. Major topics include: technologies and tools used in business applications, relational and object-oriented data models, database query languages, query and transaction processing, integrity and data recovery, distributed and client-server technologies.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**CSIS0922. Introduction to computer graphics (6 credits)**

This course introduces the concepts and applications of computer graphics. It covers the following topics: the structure and I/O devices of a computer graphics system, user-interface, concepts in shape modeling and display, techniques for image synthesis, principles of scientific visualization, and applications of computer graphics in animation and simulation. The students are also expected to learn basic skills in 2D and 3D graphics design.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

**CSIS0923. Multimedia systems and applications (6 credits)**

This course introduces the technologies and applications in multimedia computing. It covers the system aspects and issues of design and development of multimedia applications. Major topics include: medium data representations, design issues, application development tools, data compression, storage systems, scheduling techniques, network requirements and multimedia database information retrieval.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**CSIS0924. Internet and E-commerce (6 credits)**

This course introduces the Internet as a medium for communication and information exchanges as well as a basis for electronic commerce and business. Major topics include: Internet history, structure, protocols and Internet applications, intranet and extranet, virtual private networks, the World Wide Web, payment systems, security, public key infrastructure, etc.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**CSIS0925. Business information systems (6 credits)**

Fundamental principles of Management Information Systems are covered. Topics include: organisational and technical foundations of Information Systems (IS); survey of computer-based IS; management of IS resources; IS requirement analysis and design; database management; telecommunications; end user computing. Special emphasis is paid to the Internet as a foundation for new business models and processes.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**CSIS0926. Information technology and society (6 credits)**

This course discusses the social impacts and implications of and legal issues related to information technology. Major topics include: historical and social contexts of computing, risks and liabilities of safety-critical systems, philosophical foundations of ethics, computer crime, intellectual property, privacy and civil liberties, economic issues in computing, implications of the Internet, etc.

*Prerequisite:* CSIS0911

*This course is for non-Engineering students only.*

---

**ECONOMICS AND FINANCE**

*Examinations, Coursework Assessment, Prerequisites and Combinations*

**First Year**

Three courses are offered by the School of Economics and Finance for first year students: Introduction to economics I, Introduction to economics II, and Analysis of economic data. Although A-level mathematics is not a prerequisite and calculus is not used, a strong mathematics background is recommended for students to cope with the requirements of these courses.

Unless otherwise specified, all second- and third-year courses require either Introduction to economics I or Advanced Level Economics as a prerequisite. Additional prerequisites are also specified in some cases.

Candidates intending to take not less than 48 credits from the School of Economics and Finance in their second and third years are required to take ECON1001 in their first year.

The examination for each course, unless otherwise specified, is one two-hour written paper. The final grade will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework. For the courses offered by the School of Economics and Finance, this weighting shall be in the ratio to be determined by the individual lecturer. For courses offered by other departments, the weighting of coursework will be determined by the departments concerned.

## Syllabuses

### *First-year Courses*

#### **ECON1001. Introduction to economics I (6 credits)**

An introduction to the basic concepts and principles of economics, with emphasis on the theoretical framework of choice theory, the nature of constraints, the measure of value, the laws of demand and productivity, and the implications for resource use and employment.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

#### **ECON1002. Introduction to economics II (6 credits)**

Further discussion of demand and supply and multi-market equilibrium, especially in an aggregative context. An introduction to money, banking, financial markets, and open economies.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

#### **ECON1003. Analysis of economic data (6 credits)**

This course studies the measurement and interpretation of economic variables, and how to model their relationships using appropriate empirical methods. Topics include interpretation of headline statistics, describing economic aggregates, modeling of economic relationships and drawing conclusions from observations.

Assessment: coursework 50%, examination 50%.

## **Second and Third Years**

1. For a student intending to take eight or more courses in the School of Economics and Finance in his second and third years, he must take (1) **ECON2101 or ECON2113**, and (2) **ECON2102 or ECON2114**. Except with special permission from the Director of the School, a student shall take these courses during the second year.
2. The final grade for each course will be determined by the candidate's performance in the Examination and an assessment of coursework, in the ratio to be determined by the individual lecturer.



3. For the Examination, students may take any number of courses in the School in combination with courses from any other department or departments, subject to approval by the relevant Heads of Departments and to Faculty regulations and timetable constraints. All courses are examined at the end of the semester in which they are taken.
4. The courses listed will not necessarily be offered every year; from time to time, depending on the exigencies of staffing, additional courses may be offered.

## Syllabuses

### *Second-year Courses*

#### **ECON2101. Microeconomic theory (6 credits)**

The laws of demand and supply, returns, and costs; price and output determination in different market situations; theory of factor pricing and income distribution; general equilibrium; interest and capital. Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

#### **ECON2102. Macroeconomic theory (6 credits)**

Theories of income, employment, and the price level; analysis of secular growth and business fluctuations; introduction to monetary and fiscal policy. Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

#### **ECON2113. Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)**

Examine microeconomic issues with applications. Topics include: consumer behaviour, cost structure, market structure, theory of the firm, factor market and general equilibrium. (Open only to non-BEcon, non-BEcon&Fin and non-BFin students). Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

#### **ECON2114. Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)**

Economics of inflation, unemployment, income and output determination in the short run and the long run. Money, interest rates and exchange rates. Macroeconomic stabilization policies and open economy macroeconomic issues. (Open only to non-BEcon, non-BEcon&Fin and non-BFin students). Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

### *Second- or Third-year Courses*

#### **ECON0103. The economics of human resources (6 credits)**

Investment in human capital; the economics of the family and of discrimination; wage determination and the operation of the labour market; the choice of labour contracts. Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

**ECON0104. Public finance (6 credits)**

Study of the role of government in the economy, using microeconomic theory. The course covers public expenditure analysis and methods of financing government expenditures. It explores the underlying theory of welfare economics as well as the economic effects of public policy such as public sector pricing, expenditure and tax policies.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0106. Games and decisions (6 credits)**

The course offers an introduction to the theory of games and decision making under uncertainty, illustrated by examples from specialized branches of economics. Topics may include: expected utility theory, moral hazard and adverse selection, bargaining over the division of a good, models of auctions and bidding behaviour, and the theory of repeated interaction.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0107. History of economic thought (6 credits)**

A reflection on the various ways modern economic ideas trace their roots to some major analytical writings of the old masters. Over time, some paradigms were better developed and some analysis more vigorously refined, while some important questions were lost. The course begins with the French School founded by Quesnay, and then proceeds along the English tradition: Smith, Ricardo, Mill and finally the Cambridge School from Marshall to Keynes. The Austrian School will also be introduced, covering some writings from Wicksell to Hayek.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0109. Topics in macroeconomics (6 credits)**

This course provides students with an up-to-date account of the theory and practice of modern macroeconomics. The following areas that have shaped modern macroeconomic research will be covered: real business cycle theory, endogenous growth theory, and new Keynesian theories of labour markets, asset markets and sticky prices. Other selected topics on fiscal and monetary policy will also be discussed.

Prerequisites: ECON2101 or ECON2113 and ECON2102 or ECON2114.

Assessment: coursework 50%, examination 50%.

---

**ECON0204. The economics of finance (6 credits)**

A survey of the economic theory underlying corporate and investment finance models, with emphasis on financial instruments. Topics include: balance sheet management and evaluation, capital market equilibrium and efficiency, evolution of credit and money market instruments like financial swaps, stocks and bonds, financial futures and options. Eurocurrencies and the role played by banks, insurance companies and other financial institutions.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0205. Theories of investment (6 credits)**

Applications of the theory of choice over time (capital theory) to the investment decisions of individuals, firms and economies, under different assumptions regarding certainty, uncertainty, and adjustment costs.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

**ECON0206. Capital theory (6 credits)**

General equilibrium theory involving time under certainty conditions. The concepts of full information, stationary state, and steady state. Assumptions about information costs, transaction costs and complete markets. Fisher's separation theorem. Theory of consumption over discrete and continuous time. Theory of production over discrete and continuous time. Determination of general equilibrium over time. Intertemporal prices and interest rates.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0207. Monetary economics (6 credits)**

This course discusses the role of money in the economy, including how money affects inflation, interest rates, output and employment in both the static and dynamic contexts. Related topics are theories of money demand and supply, the conduct of monetary policy, rules vs. discretion, adaptive and rational expectations, time inconsistency, the origin of money, electronic means of payments, currency boards and the monetary system of Hong Kong.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0208. Economics of banking (6 credits)**

This course examines the functions and behaviour of banks from an economic rather than a management perspective. Topics include the origin of financial intermediaries, banks vs. non-bank financial institutions, organization of the banking industry, lender-borrower relationship, equilibrium credit rationing, banks as delegated monitors, banks in the macroeconomy, bank runs and systemic risks, risk management of the banking firm, and the regulation of banks.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0209. Finance and development (6 credits)**

This course studies the interaction between the financial sector and the rest of the economy, that is, how financial markets and institutions affect economic performance and vice versa. Topics include flow-of-funds accounts, financial structure and economic development, financial repression, financial liberalization and financial deepening, financial reform in developing and transition economies, banking crises and currency crises, capital account liberalization, the globalization of world capital markets, and financial policies and regulation.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0301. Theory of international trade (6 credits)**

The theory of international trade; the bases, direction, terms, volume, and gains of trade. The effects of tariffs, quantitative restrictions, and international integration.

Assessment: coursework 50%, examination 50%.

---

**ECON0302. International finance (6 credits)**

The interpretation of balance of payments and the adjustment to national and international equilibria, through changes in price levels, exchange rates, and national income. Other topics may include: foreign exchange market and Eurocurrency market, alternative exchange rate regimes, capital movements, exchange controls, and international monetary organizations.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

**ECON0401. Comparative economic systems (6 credits)**

Alternative approaches to the understanding of the operation of economic systems, including an approach based on different structures of property rights.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0402. Industrial organization (6 credits)**

Study of the pricing and output decisions of firms under conditions of less than perfect competition or monopoly; theories of oligopoly and monopolistic competition; information costs and advertising; examination of pricing practices such as price discrimination, tie-in selling, predatory pricing and resale price maintenance.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0403. The economics of property rights (6 credits)**

Implications of different structures of property rights for economic behaviour; rights structures classified in terms of exclusivity and transferability; costs of enforcing rights and of forming contracts as main constraints in the derivation of hypotheses; the Coase Theorem and the theories associated with contracting and with the dissipation of rent.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0405. The economics of law (6 credits)**

Economic analysis applied to law. Topics may include: efficiency of law, rules of liability, tort rights and remedies, criminal sanction, legislative processes as resource allocating and income distributing mechanisms.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0406. The economy and the state (6 credits)**

Economic analysis is applied to the study of public choice and the relationship between the state and the economy. Topics include: social choice, collective action, voting and elections, interest groups, bureaucracy, constitutions, law and courts, property rights and institutional change.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0501. Economic development (6 credits)**

Characteristics of underdevelopment; factors in economic development; theoretical and policy aspects of development.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0503. Urban economic problems (6 credits)**

Study of urban problems and urban economics, with emphasis on microeconomic theory using elementary calculus. Topics covered: cost-benefit analysis and urban problems, urban public finance and fiscal federalism, urban transportation economics, housing market, theory of land rent and land use, environmental economics and pollution.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

**ECON0504. Transportation economics (6 credits)**

Microeconomic theory applied to transportation, with emphasis placed on intercity freight and passenger transportation. Topics include: cost function approach to transport supply, economies of scale and traffic density, structure of demand among discrete modal choices, value of time, forecasting of demand and modal split, optimal pricing and investment in infrastructure, contestable markets and the theory of network competition, and regulation of rates, entry and exit.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0601. Economic development of China (6 credits)**

An analytical study of the major problems in China's economic development since 1949. Topics include: economic heritage, development strategy, economic organization, planning, management, reform, and an evaluation of the Chinese experiments.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0602. Foreign trade and investment in China (6 credits)**

This course has three parts: China trade, Chinese financial markets and direct investment in China. For China trade, topics include: structure and trend of Chinese exports and imports, reform of Chinese foreign trade regime, foreign exchange rate regime and China's role in the new trade environment under the World Trade Organization. For Chinese financial markets emphasis will be placed on Chinese financial institutions and markets including: the central banking system, the commercial banking industry, government and corporate debt markets, the stock market, and the foreign exchange market. For direct investment, theories of corporate finance and corporate governance will be used to analyze the behaviour of Chinese enterprises and the implications of such behaviour for foreign joint ventures. Government regulations will also be covered.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0603. The economic system of Hong Kong (6 credits)**

Various aspects of the economic system of Hong Kong: its economic structure, the public sector, monetary system and banking, foreign trade and balance of payments, industry, labour and service sector, land and housing, and economic relations with China.

Assessment: coursework 50%, examination 50%.

---

**ECON0605. Economic history of China (6 credits)**

An overview of China's economy from the Han dynasty to the 20th century and its relation with the rest of the world. Growth in productivity and population, development of transportation and market infrastructure, money and credit in the two Han, Sui/Tang, Song/Yuan, and Ming/Qing era. China's foreign trade in classical, medieval and modern times. European discovery of the New World and its impact on China's economy and trade. Comparisons of 18th/19th century European economies and 20th century Asian economies. China's economic performance in the past two centuries and implications for the 21st century.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

**ECON0606. Current economic affairs (6 credits)**

This seminar-style course is designed to train students to analyze economic problems of the day, particularly those relating to the Hong Kong economy. Students are expected to conduct supervised research on current economic problems and to lead and participate in classroom discussions.

Co-requisite: ECON0603.

Assessment: coursework 100%.

---

**ECON0701. Introductory econometrics (6 credits)**

This course is an elementary introduction to basic empirical techniques. Topics include: the linear regression model, model specification, properties of the linear model under alternative assumptions, dynamic and simultaneous equation models.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0702. Mathematical methods in economics (6 credits)**

The main emphasis of the course is to explain the mathematical structure of some undergraduate level economic theories, in terms of the way in which each particular mathematical assumption is translated into their economic counterpart. The course covers multi-variable unconstrained maximization, constrained maximization, comparative statics, and some dynamic economic models involving first order and second order differential equations.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0703. Mathematical economics (6 credits)**

Modern economic theory treated mathematically. Topics may include: applications of optimization to choice theory, applications of the implicit function theorem to comparative statics, applications of differential and difference equations to stability of equilibrium, applications of linear mathematics and fixed point theorems to Leontief and Arrow-Debreu models.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0706. Uncertainty and information (6 credits)**

This course examines the effects of uncertainty and information costs on individual decision making and market equilibrium. Topics may include the expected utility theorem, risk bearing and risk sharing, strategic uncertainty, search models, adverse selection, signaling equilibrium, contract theory, and mechanism design.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON0707. Economic forecasting (6 credits)**

This course introduces basic techniques in forecasting economic structural relationships. Topics include smoothing, filters, arima models, unit roots and stochastic trends, vector autoregressions, cointegration and error correction, regime switching, volatility, diagnostics, model selection, forecast evaluation and combination.

Prerequisite: ECON0701.

Assessment: coursework 100%.

**ECON3108. Selected topics in price theory (6 credits)**

Alternative meanings of economic efficiency, the specification of constraints for hypothesis testing, the problem of social cost, the dissipation of rent, the theory of the firm and the state, and/or other topics selected by the lecturer(s).

Prerequisites: ECON2101 or ECON2113 and ECON2102 or ECON2114.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0102. Financial markets and institutions (6 credits)**

This course discusses developed and developing financial markets, institutional and regulatory frameworks, recent developments in securitization, internationalization of markets. The general equilibrium of asset markets, the efficient market hypothesis, the behaviour of asset prices, and term structure of interest rates will be discussed. The markets to be covered include: money markets, bond markets, equity (stock) market, forward markets, futures markets, forex markets, insurance markets and others.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016/FINA1002 Introduction to finance.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0103. International banking (6 credits)**

Nature of international banking. Comparison with domestic banking. Jurisdiction and regulatory framework: the Basle Concordat. Xeno-currency markets and international banking. International financing techniques: loan syndication, project financing, NIFs, RUFs etc. Risk exposure and control: sovereign risk, country risk, exchange risk, interest risk and credit risk. Management and strategies of international banks. 'National treatment' and financial centres.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0104. Management of commercial banks (6 credits)**

This course introduces basic bank management techniques that include: asset and liability management, liquidity and reserve management, credit analysis, loan pricing and off-balance-sheet banking. Regulatory issues of commercial banks are also discussed.

Assessment: coursework 60%, examination 40%.

---

**FINA0105. International financial management (6 credits)**

The international corporation and its environment. Forex markets. Forex risk management. International working capital management. International treasury management. Foreign investment and capital budgeting. International financial markets: Euro-currency, Euro-bond, and Euro-notes markets.

Assessment: coursework 50%, examination 50%.

---

**FINA0301. Derivative securities (6 credits)**

To provide a comprehensive analysis of the properties of options and futures and to offer a theoretical framework within which all derivatives can be valued and hedged. Topics covered: simple arbitrage relationships for forward and futures contracts, hedging and basis risk, stock index futures, swaps, trading strategies involving options, valuation of options using a binomial model and the Black-Scholes analysis, options on interest rates, stock indices, currencies and futures, and exotic option.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016/FINA1002 Introduction to finance.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

**FINA0302. Corporate finance (6 credits)**

A course on the advanced treatment of corporate financial decisions. Topics to be covered include corporate valuation; cost of capital; capital structure; leasing; mergers and acquisitions; options; warrants; and convertible bonds.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016/FINA1002 Introduction to finance.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0401. Empirical finance (6 credits)**

This course is a survey of the empirical research methods used most often in the analysis of financial markets and how they are applied to actual market data. Topics may include: tests of asset pricing and term structure models, efficient markets hypothesis, and event study methodology.

Prerequisite: ECON0701

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0402. Mathematical finance (6 credits)**

Arbitrage Theory. Properties of the portfolio frontier. Two fund separation. Valuation of state contingent claims. Derivative assets analysis. Multiperiod securities markets. Differential information.

Prerequisites: MATH1901 and STAT0103.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0501. Asian financial institutions (6 credits)**

History and institutional aspects of financial markets in Hong Kong, Singapore, Thailand and other Asian economies. Regulatory policies and practices.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0804. Fixed income securities (6 credits)**

An integrated analysis of the market institutions, theory and empirical evidence in the area of fixed-income markets. Topics covered: Treasury markets, bond mathematics, arbitrage-free models of the term structure, corporate-debt pricing, convertible bonds, primary mortgage markets and securitization, immunization and portfolio insurance, valuation of futures and options on bonds, embedded options, and interest rate risk management.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016/FINA1002 Introduction to finance and BUSI0069/FINA0301 Derivative securities.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA0805. Real estate finance (6 credits)**

Introduction to real estate economics, mortgage market, real estate auctions in Hong Kong, pre-sale market in Hong Kong, pricing of land and residential/commercial properties, mortgage-backed securities and mortgage company.

Assessment: coursework 60%, examination 40%.

---

**FINA2802. Investments (6 credits)**

A comprehensive analysis of various investment vehicles and portfolio management techniques. Topics covered: modern portfolio theory and asset pricing models, portfolio management, investment strategies, analysis of common stocks and bonds, and introduction to derivatives securities.

Prerequisite: BUSI0016/FINA1002 Introduction to finance.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.



*Third-year Courses***ECON3505. Project evaluation (6 credits)**

This course covers the economic evaluation of projects from a public sector viewpoint using microeconomic tools. It explores the normative aspects of evaluating public projects and policies, the measurement of welfare change and public investment criteria, and employs basic financial analysis. Economic and financial evaluation of government projects and Build-Operate-Transfer infrastructure projects (so-called BOT projects) will be discussed.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA3806. Risk management (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to (1) the use of insurance in business and (2) corporate financial risk management. Topics include insurance contract analysis, life and health insurance, property and liability insurance, pensions, identifying and measuring financial risk, and managing financial risk using forwards, futures, swaps, options, and innovations such as caps, floors, collars, break and range forwards, and swaptions.

Prerequisites: FINA0302 and FINA2802.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**FINA3807. Special topics in finance (6 credits)**

This course covers current developments in finance. Possible topics include security trading and market making, venture analysis, financial contracting, investment strategies for local markets and other current issues in finance. The exact topic to be offered will be determined by instructors.

Prerequisites: FINA0302 and FINA2802.

Assessment: coursework 40%, examination 60%.

---

**ECON3801. Reading course (6 credits)**

This course consists of supervised reading and written work. Candidates may specialize in one topic under the supervision of a lecturer(s). Examples of topics are: the problem of social cost, investment in human capital, general equilibrium theory, empirical methods in international trade, international monetary relations, theories of saving and the East Asian economies, and current economic problems of Hong Kong.

An original project paper is required in lieu of a written paper in the Examination. It shall not exceed 10,000 words in length, and must be completed and presented not later than May 31 of semester VI of the curriculum. Candidates shall submit a statement that the project papers represent their own work (or in the case of joint work, a statement countersigned by their co-worker(s), which shows the degree of their works) undertaken after the registration in the course.

Prerequisites: ECON2101 or ECON2113 and ECON2102 or ECON2114.

Assessment: project paper 100%.

---

**FINA3601. Reading course (6 credits)**

The course consists of supervised reading and written work. Candidates may specialize in one topic under the supervision of a lecturer(s). Examples of topics are: securities transaction, informational role of prices, risk management, financial forecasting, and techniques of financial analysis.

An original project paper is required in lieu of a written paper in the Examination. It shall not exceed 10,000 words in length, and must be completed and presented not later than May 31 of the semester VI of the curriculum. Candidates shall submit a statement that the project paper represent their own work (or in the case of joint work, a statement countersigned by their co-worker(s), which show the degree of their works) undertaken after the registration in the course.

Prerequisites: ECON2101 or ECON2113 and ECON2102 or ECON2114.

Assessment: project paper 100%.

**ECON3802/FINA3602. Dissertation (12 credits)**

Candidates may write a dissertation under the supervision of a lecturer(s). Topics offered may vary from year to year, depending on the research interests of the staff. A satisfactory dissertation may be offered in lieu of two papers in the Examination.

Candidates must submit the titles and outlines of their dissertations for approval by the Head of the School not later than January 1 of the semester VI of the curriculum, and the dissertations, which should not exceed 20,000 words in length, shall be completed and presented not later than May 31 of that academic year.

Prerequisites: ECON2101 or ECON2113 and ECON2102 or ECON2114.

(Note: The course extends over two semesters.)

Assessment: project paper 100%.

**ENGLISH**

The Department of English gives teaching and supervision in English and American literatures, world literature in English, sociolinguistics, critical linguistics, and English language and linguistics. The Department offers a **major in English Studies** in the second and third years. Students who major in English Studies must select a minimum of eight six-credit courses (or equivalent) in English.

The first-year English courses, **ENGL1007** and **ENGL1008**, are normally open to students with grades of A, B, or C in the Use of English Examination. Students intending to enrol in English courses in Year 2 and Year 3 must normally have completed at least one Year 1 course and achieved a satisfactory result. Students intending to MAJOR in English in Year 2 and 3 must have completed both Year 1 courses and achieved satisfactory results. Students with less than a C range average in their first year English courses, or with an unsatisfactory report from their tutor, will not normally be permitted to major in English.

At the end of the students' first or second year, the Department will invite a small number to be **Special Honours English Majors**. Selected on the basis of their academic record and tutors' recommendations, these students will take at least 6 credits in English annually beyond the normal requirement for an English major and will be guaranteed admission to the courses of their choice. In their final year they will register for the tutorial course, Advanced Topics in English Studies (ENGL3032). Upon completing their programme and meeting the Special Honours requirements, these students will be given special recognition by the Department.

Regular attendance at tutorials and other classes and the punctual completion of work prescribed by the student's tutor or supervisor are expected.

Choice of courses and options is subject to the approval of the department. Students must ensure that their choice of courses conforms to any prerequisites laid down by the department.

Prescribed reading, specifications for each course, recommended course combinations, and information about prerequisites are available in the department handbook and the website <http://www.hku.hk/english>.

**First Year****ENGL1007. Introduction to English Studies I (9 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to English literature and linguistics.

*Prerequisite for BA students for Introduction to English Studies II.*

**ENGL1008. Introduction to English Studies II (9 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues to introduce students to English literature and linguistics.

*Introduction to English Studies I (ENGL1007) is Prerequisite for this course for BA students.*

---

*First Year Examinations*

First year English courses will each be examined by a two-hour written paper.

---

*First Year Coursework Assessment*

Coursework assessment marks are based on tutorial assignments and class performance. The final grades for the department's first year courses are based on the student's performance in the written examination (60%) and in coursework (40%).

---

**Second and Third Year**

All courses beyond the first year may be taken in either the second or third year, unless otherwise indicated. These courses consist of: (a) English, American, and postcolonial writing, including individual authors and genres, as well as literary and cultural topics; (b) English language studies and linguistics, including the linguistic analysis of English, sociolinguistics, the history of linguistics, critical linguistics, and the politics of language; and (c) the English language at work in a range of contexts and genres, including creative writing and drama.

The Department also offers a tutorial course, Advanced Topics in English Studies (ENGL3032). This is a 12-credit course, which allows students to follow a programme designed to suit their individual interests. There are no formal lectures and students are assessed on the basis of their written work. Admission to this course is subject to satisfactory examination results and tutors' recommendations.

---

*Second- and Third-Year Examinations*

Modes of assessment vary from course to course. Please check the course description for details of how each course is assessed.

If staffing arrangements permit, the following second- and third-year courses will be offered:

---

**ENGL2001. English sounds (6 credits)**

Introduction to English phonetics and phonology; systems of description and transcription; English accents and variation; the aesthetics of sounds.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2002. Language in society (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the study of 'sociolinguistics', which deals with the relationship between language and society. Topics will vary, but may include the following: multilingualism, language varieties, language planning, language change, English in contact with other languages.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

**ENGL2003. The history of English (6 credits)**

This is a course about language origins and language change. It investigates the social, political and linguistic reasons that English has developed into the global superpower language of today, and introduces basic tools and methodologies for studying language change in English. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2004. English syntax (6 credits)**

This course introduces the structure of English by investigating approaches to grammar, models of grammatical analysis, and the grammar of contemporary English. It is interested in the relationship between morphology and syntax, and grammar and linguistics. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2005. Dictionaries (6 credits)**

This course will start by considering the tradition of English dictionaries associated with the work of Johnson, Webster and Murray. It will then proceed to review current techniques of dictionary compilation, evaluating the impact of twentieth-century linguistics, computer technology, and corpus linguistics on the English dictionary today. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2007. Literary linguistics (6 credits)**

This course uses linguistic techniques to analyse literary texts by examining both the devices that literary authors employ and the literary effects they create in different styles and genres. It employs methods of structural linguistic analysis (looking at the syntax and phonology of texts) as well as socio-historical and pragmatic methods. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2010. English novel I (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**ENGL2011. English novel II (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its development in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**ENGL2012. Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)**

In the late 20th century, developments in critical thought had a major impact on literature and criticism. Relations between literary production and language, politics and history were radically re-examined by and through what has become known as 'theory'. As a body of thought, theory includes such diverse and conflicting schools and movements as Marxism, poststructuralism, feminism and gender theory, new historicism, postcolonialism and postmodernism. As well as exploring the institution of theory in the academy, students will put theory into practice in readings of selected literary texts. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

**ENGL2013. American literature I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of seminal texts from the period of Settlement (1620) to the Civil War (1860).

(American Literature I and II may be taken together over the two semesters of the second or third year as a 12-credit course leading to a single examination. Please see the entry for the course **ENGL2025. American literature.**)

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2014. American literature II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A study of seminal texts from the beginning of American Realism (c. 1860) to World War II.

(American Literature I and II may be taken together over the two semesters of the second or third year as a 12-credit course leading to a single examination. Please see the entry for the course **ENGL2025. American literature.**)

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2015. An introduction to English drama (6 credits)**

A discussion of styles and themes in English drama from the 17th to the 20th century. The focus will be on developments in comedy and social and historical drama.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2016. Modern English drama (6 credits)**

A study of British drama in the 20th century.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2017. The language of film (6 credits)**

An analysis of the distinctiveness of 'film language' as a narrative medium. The course will develop a comparison between film and the novel through close analysis of a number of historically and critically significant examples. Topics will include: narrative, narration, action, subjectivity, spectacle, point of view, style, fiction, era, ideology.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2022. Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)**

This course will explore questions of identity and difference as expressed in women's writing. It will provide a general introduction to feminist literary theory and the on-going range of feminist interventions in literary and cultural studies.

Assessment will be by 100% written coursework.

**ENGL2025. American literature (12 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The courses **American Literature I** and **American Literature II** may be taken together over the two semesters as a 12-credit course leading to a single three-hour examination at the end of the second semester.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2027. Text and discourse in contemporary English (6 credits)**

This course will examine how writers exploit the resources of English for creative and communicational purposes in contemporary writing in different genres.

Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**ENGL2028. English in journalism (6 credits)**

A professionally-oriented course for those interested in pursuing a career in journalism. Topics will include: the elements of style, Asian journalism in English, journalism in Hong Kong.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2029. English rhetoric: argumentation and debate (6 credits)**

The course will cover the theory and practice of spoken rhetoric and argumentation in the English language, engaging students in the productive skills of debate.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2030. World Englishes (6 credits)**

This course will survey the English language throughout the world, with reference to the use of English in Britain, Asia, and Hong Kong. This course will focus particularly on the development of 'new Englishes' in Asia and Hong Kong.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2031. The semantics and pragmatics of English (6 credits)**

This course introduces the study of meaning in the English language. We will examine semantic meanings – meanings encoded in the language system itself – and also pragmatic meanings – meanings inferred from the communicative context of language use.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2033. English novel III (6 credits)**

A study of narrative fiction, and of its developments in the twentieth century.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2035. Reading poetry (6 credits)**

An advanced reading course for students interested in specializing in poetry.

Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**ENGL2036. Advanced literary linguistics (6 credits)**

This course extends the linguistic analysis of literary texts begun in **ENGL2007. Literary Linguistics**. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2037. Science fiction (6 credits)**

This is a survey of the genre of science fiction from late 19th century literature by H.G. Wells through to recent movies such as *Blade Runner* and *The Matrix*. As well as formal and historical study of the SF genre, the course will be concerned with fictional presentations of scientific possibility and the moral and political strategies that underlie representations of utopia and dystopia. Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2039. Language and gender (6 credits)**

This course examines the relationship between cultural attitudes and language, how gender socialization is reflected in the structure and use of language, and the effectiveness of political and social forces in “legislated” linguistic change. Stereotypes and biases about the sexes, standard and vernacular norms will also be examined in the course.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

(Prerequisite: ENGL2002 or the consent of the instructor)

---

**ENGL2045. Travel writing (6 credits)**

This is a survey of European travel writing as a literary genre from the medieval period to the present day. The writings of travelers and explorers such as Marco Polo, Christopher Columbus and James Cook are examined, as well as those of modern travel writers such as Freya Stark, Graham Greene, D.H. Lawrence, Paul Theroux and Jan Morris. European travel writing is explored formally and thematically with the aim of introducing students to its many strategies and subtexts, and especially its historical role in articulating ‘otherness’ for the European imagination.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2046. English words (6 credits)**

This course explores the structure, meaning, history, and usage of English words from a linguistic point of view.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2047. English discourse structures and strategies (6 credits)**

This course will provide an introduction to the analysis of English discourse from a linguistic perspective. Students will learn rhetorical methodologies and examine their effects on readers and listeners. Units include: spoken and written English discourse, global organization and cohesion, discourse markers, information structure, narrative, and non-verbal structures and strategies.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework. (No prerequisite. Recommended: one course listed under 'Structural Linguistics in English' in the course handbook)

**ENGL2048. Language and jargon (6 credits)**

This course looks at specialized sub-languages used by different social groups. For example, drug addicts, criminals, butchers, and dog-breeders all have their own specific languages or jargons. The various reasons that have been advanced for the formation of these languages are discussed, and their role in the wider language culture of different societies is examined. The course also looks at the history of the treatment of specialized sub-languages by official agencies, lexicographers and linguists.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2049. The history of English: sociolinguistic perspectives (6 credits)**

This course will have a specific focus on the history of the English language from a sociolinguistic perspective. The course will discuss issues related to language contact, standardisation, variation, and varieties of English. Particular reference will be made to the role of attitudes and ideologies in the development of the language.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework assessment.

---

**ENGL2050. English corpus linguistics (6 credits)**

Corpus linguistics is a rapidly-developing methodology in the study of language. It exploits the power of modern computer technology to manipulate and analyse large collections of naturally-occurring language ("corpora"). This course will introduce students to the use of computers and computerized corpora as tools for exploring the English language.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2053. Linguistic categories of English (6 credits)**

This course offers a critical investigation of the linguistic categories of English. Both purely formal categories (e.g. phonetic segments) and meaningful symbolic categories (e.g. morphemes, lexical items, syntactic constructions) will be considered.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2054. Race, language and identity (6 credits)**

This course looks at different notions of identity and the origins of modern understandings of ethnicity. It focusses on the contribution made by ideas about language to theories of group identity, including nationalism, and the tensions between linguistic, racial, religious and cultural notions of identity.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2055. American Gothic: Haunted Homes (6 credits)**

In this course we will examine the gothic as an important genre in American literature and trace its tradition across two centuries. In close readings of some classic short stories, we will seek to identify the elements and the rhetoric of the genre in order to appreciate the specific use that writers at different times have made of the gothic form. Reading some famous novels and novellas as well as some lesser-known texts, the kinds of questions we will then discuss are: How do gothic narratives imaginatively shape such central themes of American culture as liberty, enslavement, and marriage? How do they explore the relationship between the imagination, happiness, and fear? How do they relate to social and cultural change?

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.



**ENGL2057. Text and image (6 credits)**

This interdisciplinary course explores relations between literature and various forms of image-based representation. It begins with 'painterly' descriptions in novels and poetry, and common strands in art and literary criticism, and proceeds to discussion of relations between film and literature, such as the presence of cinematographic form in modern literature. In the concluding module, we consider the shift in emphasis from text-based to image-based culture and its impact on postmodern society. Course material consists of critical essays, and examples from literature, the pictorial arts and the moving image.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2058. Narrative prose: a linguistic investigation (6 credits)**

This course examines the linguistic techniques by which narrative writing in English works. With a focus on literary texts, the course will consider topics such as co-reference and cohesion, syntactic style and patterning, place and time deixis, the handling of conversation, modality and point of view, and more generally, the linguistics of 'realism', and the linguistic basis of irony.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2059. American drama and American film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce American drama and American film: developing stories of America in performance. We will emphasize performance, as well as analysis: casting, acting, directing, staging, special effects, and audience. As centers of industry, education, and culture moved across the country, form and innovation shifted accordingly. Looking at competing histories and narrative strategies, we will see how American plays and American films participate separately and together in remaking American myths and literary patterns, while assimilating and rejecting inherited models. Considerations of American English, silence, the loner's staged resistances, and audience participation will be included. We will read plays such as: Eugene O'Neill's *The Hairy Ape*, Tennessee Williams's *The Glass Menagerie*, Arthur Miller's *All My Sons*, Sam Shepard's *True West*, and Ishmael Reed's *Hubba City*. We will see films such as *Casablanca*, *High Noon*, *The Way We Were*, *Hair*, and *Boyz N the Hood*.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2061. British and American literary culture (6 credits)**

This course will focus on representative American or British literary and cultural texts. After attending lectures and workshops in the department, students will have an opportunity to travel to relevant places in the United States or Britain, and will be given related background tuition or lectures at a North American University or a British university. Students will be required to present portfolios including essays, presentations, and field-trip reports to the department.

This course will only be offered to students majoring in English.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2062. The history of linguistics (6 credits)**

This course will trace the history of ideas about language and its relationship to the mind and the world, from ancient to modern times, with attention to both European and Asian traditions.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

**ENGL2063. Advanced English phonetics and phonology (6 credits)**

This course will provide further instruction in the theoretical underpinnings and practical applications of phonetics to the study of English and general linguistics. Topics may include the following: the history of phonetics, problems of phonological analysis, current trends in phonetics, systems of transcription, and advanced transcription exercises.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2064. Advanced English syntax (6 credits)**

This course will provide an overview of recent theoretical linguistic approaches to the analysis of syntax. Detailed instruction in the application of at least one theoretical model to the English language will be given, and students will be expected to deal with problem sets, and to comment critically on problems of analysis and application.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2065. Meaning and metaphor (6 credits)**

This course will introduce students to a number of questions about linguistic meaning and examine various definitions of metaphor. Among the questions considered are: What role does metaphor play in human language? In what way (if at all) do languages create or embody particular culturally-specific world-views?

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2066. Orientalism and linguistics (6 credits)**

This course studies linguistics as a branch of what Edward Said has termed 'Orientalism', i.e. western models of Asian language, literature, culture and society created within European colonialism. It looks at the ways western linguists of the 19th and 20th century have 'imagined' or categorized Asian languages, relating those categories to debates within western linguistics.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2067. American English (6 credits)**

This course addresses the problems (theoretical and practical) inherent in defining a variety of English as 'American'. Issues treated include the history of American English; dialectology; sociolinguistics; Black English; and the politics of American English.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2068. Integrational linguistics (6 credits)**

The work of linguist and philosopher of language, Roy Harris, treated from a critical perspective. Topics will include some of the following: myths of language, the history of linguistic ideas, Harris on Saussure, semiotics and writing.

---

**ENGL2069. Form and meaning (6 credits)**

An investigation into the relationship between English structure and meaning (semantics and pragmatics), considering how meanings are encoded and inferred.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

**ENGL2070. Advanced topics in sociolinguistics (6 credits)**

This course is designed for students who wish to pursue advanced work in the study of language and society. The course requires the student to participate in sociolinguistic fieldwork and to complete a written project on an approved topic. Students will be required to work independently. There will be no formal lectures and no final written examination; students will meet regularly with their tutor for guidance. One or more short field trips may be organized to places of sociolinguistic interest. Assessment will be by written project incorporating the results of original fieldwork.

---

**ENGL2071. The East (6 credits)**

Interpretations of the Orient in modern western writings, from the colonial to the postcolonial period. Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**ENGL2072. American literature III (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The study of a selection of American modernist and postmodernist fiction, poetry and drama, chosen to represent contemporary styles, types and attitudes, and the variety of American society and writing in recent decades.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2073. Voices from the margin (6 credits)**

A course on twentieth-century American writing that focuses on texts by Chinese, Jewish, and African-American women writers, and on issues of American, ethnic and female identity and creativity. Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2074. Postcolonial readings (6 credits)**

This course examines important works of literature in English from perspectives opened up by recent debates on 'nation', 'narration', and 'hybridity'.

Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**ENGL2075. The idea of China (6 credits)**

An examination of English representations and interpretations of China in a selection of writings from the 18th century to the early 20th century.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2076. Romanticism (6 credits)**

A study of the literary and intellectual revolutions associated with the Romantic movement of the late 18th and early 19th century. This course will consider the development, transformations, and survival of romantic ideas and styles, and assess their importance in shaping modern literature and criticism.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

**ENGL2077. Varieties of English (6 credits)**

This course will survey English accents, dialects and other 'varieties' of English, with reference to the description and analysis of sociolinguistic variation in English.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2078. The novel today (6 credits)**

This course examines developments in the novel by studying a representative sample of recently published fiction in English. Innovations in narrative technique, such as metafiction and postmodern poetics, will be one strand of enquiry. Thematic strands will depend on the novels selected for study but are likely to include, gender, representation, globalism, postmodernism, race and ethnicity, and identity. Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2079. Shakespeare (6 credits)**

This course will explore some of the themes and form of Shakespeare's drama, and will consider how his work has been interpreted in modern times.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2080. Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)**

This course will explore the often difficult relationship between women and what has been traditionally known as the 'feminine sphere'. Women have commonly been associated with the feminine sphere of love, marriage and family and this course will consider how modernity and feminism have challenged and disrupted this assumption.

Assessment will be by 100% written coursework.

---

**ENGL2081. South East Asian writing in English (6 credits)**

A course on the new literatures in English which analyses works of fiction, poetry, drama, and critical writing from Hong Kong, Malaysia, Singapore, the Philippines, and elsewhere in Southeast Asia through postcolonial and gender frames and in their historical and cultural contexts.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2082. Modern literary criticism (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to a selection of major texts in literary criticism from the early 19th century to the 1960s. It examines principal critical concepts and methodological principles formulated in these texts and traces the developments of critical thought within this period.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2084. Modernism and short fiction (6 credits)**

This course studies the re-invention of traditional forms of writing in the modernist revolution that ushered in the twentieth century in Europe. Concentrating on short fiction, it investigates how modernist writers found ways to 'make it new'.

Assessment will be by 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**ENGL2085. Creative writing I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces students to the skills appropriate to creative writing, including poetry and the short story. It is examined by assessment of original work.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2086. Creative writing II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will develop students' skills in creative writing at an advanced level, and be examined by assessment of original work. Students who wish to be admitted to this course are required to submit samples of original work in advance to the instructor.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL3032. Advanced topics in English studies (for students in their third year of study) (12 credits)**

This is an advanced tutorial course which allows the student to follow an in-depth programme of research under the guidance of a member of staff. There are no lectures, and the course aims to encourage the student to pursue independent research. Students should choose a topic which falls within the broad area of the English Department's curriculum. This should be done in consultation with a member of staff. The student and staff member should agree a programme of study, and the student can opt either to produce a single extended piece of work (a dissertation) or four essays on related topics. The student should have regular meetings with the tutor. Admission to this course is conditional on good examination performance, and the subject matter and scope of the course requires the approval of the department.

---

**Special Topics**

The following or other special topics will be offered from time to time:

**ENGL2006. Criminological linguistics and the literature of crime (6 credits)**

This course will trace the development of crime fiction from its origins in the classic detective stories of the 19th century through to the socially-realistic crime novels of the present day, and will study the ways in which linguists and lexicographers have dealt with such notions as 'cant', 'argot', 'jargon', and 'the language of the underworld'.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2040. Asian American literature (6 credits)**

This course presents a survey of Asian American literature through literary texts from Asian American communities, including Japanese, Chinese, Korean, Filipino, and Southeast Asian Americans. We will touch on major themes explored in these texts, such as concepts of dislocation and relocation as well as finding and/or inventing a usable past. The readings span a range of genres and historical periods. The course will attempt to contextualize these texts both historically and culturally.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

**ENGL2043. Twentieth century American women's writings: Awakenings (6 credits)**

Beginning with Kate Chopin's provocative novella, *The Awakening*, a story of both personal liberation and destruction, this course will explore the many complex awakenings - literary, personal, political, familial, social - that American women experienced during the course of the twentieth century. In close readings of a variety of texts, including novella, short stories, poetry, and essays, the class will engage feminist theory as a tool for uncovering how these American women imagined themselves during the turbulent changes of the twentieth century.

Assessment will be by 60% coursework, 40% examination.

---

**ENGL2044. Shakespeare with Asian faces: Cinematic adaptations of Macbeth, King Lear, Hamlet, and Romeo and Juliet (6 credits)**

This course will look at cinematic interpretations of Shakespeare in Asian and Asian American settings. We will study four tragedies by Shakespeare and then watch a number of film adaptations, including films by Akira Kurosawa, Chen Kai-ge, and Andrej Bartkowiak. We will examine the ways in which our knowledge of these tragedies enhances our appreciation of these films and the ways in which these films tell us what is unique or "untranslatable" about Shakespeare.

Assessment will be by 100% coursework.

---

**ENGL2051. Critical and creative approaches to English (6 credits)**

For any creative writers - writers of poetry, fiction, drama - from outside the Anglo-American world, English has a complex history and often an uneasy relationship, with native languages. The decision, or the choice, to write and publish in English, is an issue they have reflected upon and debated, nationally and internationally, with other writers. Such reflections and debates constitute one of the dynamic contours of "Global English" as a discourse. Critical questions often raised in the debate concern the English language as the bearer of cultures. They include the changing roles of English as a colonial or postcolonial language, as the language of the unitary or pluralistic nations, as a dominant or minority language, as the language of 'English literature' or 'Literature in English'. In this course, students will be introduced to these questions through discussions of essays by writers who have considerable practical experience using English as the language of creativity, and who are active contributors to debates about English in their own locations.

Assessment will be by 50% examination, 50% coursework.

---

**EUROPEAN STUDIES**

The Programme in European Studies provides an interdisciplinary approach to the study of European civilization. Rather than being based in a single department, the Programme is administered through the Faculty of Arts by a Board of European Studies comprised of representatives from ten departments and the Language Centre. Both rigorous and flexible, the Programme enables students to tailor their studies to suit their individual aims; students can develop the necessary skills for a wide range of pursuits related to the politics, history, culture, and economy of Europe.

To major in European Studies, a student must take the three European Studies Core Courses (EUST1001, EUST2001, EUST3001); three years of a Core Language (French, German, Italian, or Spanish); and a minimum of twenty-four credits from an approved list of second- and third-year departmental courses (see below). In exceptional cases, a particular requirement may be waived. Any European Studies student who successfully fulfills the requirements of the major in French or the minor in French, German, Italian, or Spanish will be deemed to have satisfied the language requirement of the European Studies major. In such a case, the student will be required either to take a second language in place of the first, or to increase the load of departmental courses from 24 credits to 48 credits.

Students should note that once they have chosen a language in their first year, they must continue with the same language in the second and third years. Students should also note that some of the optional second- and third-year courses have prerequisites set by participating departments. Courses offered under the European Studies code are also open to non-majors.

## **FIRST-YEAR COURSES**

### **Compulsory courses for the European Studies major**

#### **1. EUROPEAN STUDIES CORE COURSE**

##### **EUST1001. Introduction to European Studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The principal focus of this course will be the development of the 'idea of Europe' in a historical context and more particularly the establishment and growth of the European Union during the late twentieth century. Using this focus the course will consider questions of broad interdisciplinary interest to provide a strong foundation for students who wish to pursue a major in European Studies in their second and third years. This course will also be of interest to students who do not wish to take the European Studies major but who would like to learn more about the role of the European Union in the twenty-first century. Students planning to major in European Studies in their Second and Third years must take this course as a pre-requisite.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

#### **2. LANGUAGE CORE COURSES**

**LANG1001. French I.1 (6 credits) and**

**LANG1002. French I.2 (12 credits)**

or

**LANG1003. Deutsch I.1 (German I.1) (6 credits) and**

**LANG1004. Deutsch I.2 (German I.2) (12 credits)**

or

**LANG1007. Italian I.1 (6 credits) and**

**LANG1008. Italian I.2 (6 credits)**

or

**LANG1010. Spanish I.1 (6 credits) and**

**LANG1011. Spanish I.2 (6 credits)**

## **SECOND- AND THIRD-YEAR COURSES**

### **Compulsory courses for the European Studies major**

#### **1. EUROPEAN STUDIES CORE COURSES**

##### **EUST2001. European political and economic institutions (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their second year, will familiarise students with the principal political and economic institutions of the European Union. It will also survey the links which the European Union has with other countries and trading blocs around the world.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**EUST3001. Contemporary European culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is required of all European Studies majors in their third years, focuses on contemporary European culture in the widest sense but it will also survey the roots of contemporary European culture from the end of the Second World War to the formation of the European Union.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

## 2. LANGUAGE CORE COURSES

**LANG2001. French language II.1 (12 credits) and**

**LANG3001. French language III.1 (12 credits)**

or

**LANG2004. Deutsch II.1 (German II.1) (12 credits) and**

**LANG3007. Deutsch III.1 (German III.1) (12 credits)**

or

**LANG2010. Italian II (12 credits) and**

**LANG3012. Italian III (12 credits)**

or

**LANG2011. Spanish II (12 credits) and**

**LANG3013. Spanish III (12 credits)**

## 3. DEPARTMENTAL COURSES (European Studies majors must take a minimum of twenty-four credits from the following list)

*Comparative Literature*

**CLIT2003. Modern European drama: drama and the modern subject (6 credits)**

**CLIT2004. Modern European drama: drama, carnival and comedy (6 credits)**

**CLIT2005. Literary and cultural theory I (6 credits)**

**CLIT2006. Literary and cultural theory II (6 credits)**

**CLIT2007. Film culture I (6 credits)**

**CLIT2008. Film culture II (6 credits)**

**CLIT2013. Feminist cultural studies I (6 credits)**

**CLIT2014. Feminist cultural studies II (6 credits)**

**CLIT2017. A new introduction to modernism (6 credits)**

**CLIT2021. Reading the nineteenth-century: revolution, romanticism and realism (6 credits)**

**CLIT2022. Reading the nineteenth-century: reaction and modernity (6 credits)**

**CLIT2024. Reading comedy: Dante and Boccaccio (6 credits)**

**CLIT2025. Visual cultures (6 credits)**

**CLIT2028. The city as cultural text (6 credits)**

**CLIT2031. Fashion theory (6 credits)**

**CLIT2034. Advanced film theory (6 credits)**

**CLIT2035. Writing madness (6 credits)**

**CLIT2045. Colonialism/postcolonialism I (6 credits)**

**CLIT2046. Colonialism/postcolonialism II (6 credits)**

**CLIT2050. Globalization and culture (6 credits)**

**CLIT2051. Jane Austen and popular culture (6 credits)**

**CLIT2057. Carnival versus tragedy: Reading renaissance culture (6 credits)**

**CLIT2059. Feminine roles and cultural myths (6 credits)**

**CLIT2066. Postmodernism (6 credits)**

**CLIT2067. Re-placing Shakespeare (6 credits)**

**CLIT2072. Deconstruction (6 credits)**



- CLIT3007.** Advanced studies in digital culture (6 credits)  
**CLIT3008.** Literature and philosophy (6 credits)
- 

*Economics and Finance*

- ECON2113.** Microeconomic analysis (6 credits)  
**ECON2114.** Macroeconomic analysis (6 credits)  
**ECON0103.** The economics of human resources (6 credits)  
**ECON0104.** Public finance (6 credits)  
**ECON0107.** History of economic thought (6 credits)  
**ECON0109.** Topics in macroeconomics (6 credits)  
**ECON0204.** The economics of finance (6 credits)  
**ECON0206.** Capital theory (6 credits)  
**ECON0207.** Monetary economics (6 credits)  
**ECON0208.** Economics of banking (6 credits)  
**ECON0209.** Finance and development (6 credits)  
**ECON0301.** Theory of international trade (6 credits)  
**ECON0302.** International finance (6 credits)  
**ECON0402.** Industrial organization (6 credits)  
**ECON0406.** The economy and the state (6 credits)  
**ECON0606.** Current economic affairs (6 credits)  
**ECON0701.** Introductory econometrics (6 credits)  
**ECON0706.** Uncertainty and information (6 credits)  
**ECON0707.** Economic forecasting (6 credits)  
**FINA0103.** International banking (6 credits)  
**FINA0105.** International financial management (6 credits)  
**FINA0302.** Corporate finance (6 credits)
- 

*English*

- ENGL2010.** English novel I (6 credits)  
**ENGL2011.** English novel II (6 credits)  
**ENGL2012.** Contemporary literary theory (6 credits)  
**ENGL2016.** Modern English drama (6 credits)  
**ENGL2022.** Women, feminism and writing I (6 credits)  
**ENGL2044.** Shakespeare with Asian faces: Cinematic adaptations of Macbeth, King Lear, Hamlet, and Romeo and Juliet (6 credits)  
**ENGL2075.** The idea of China (6 credits)  
**ENGL2076.** Romanticism (6 credits)  
**ENGL2079.** Shakespeare (6 credits)  
**ENGL2080.** Women, feminism and writing II (6 credits)  
**ENGL2082.** Modern literary criticism (6 credits)  
**ENGL2084.** Modernism and short fiction (6 credits)
- 

*Fine Arts*

- FINE2012.** Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)  
**FINE2013.** Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)  
**FINE2014.** Baroque art of Italy and Spain (6 credits)  
**FINE2015.** Baroque art of Flanders, the Netherlands and France (6 credits)  
**FINE2026.** The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)  
**FINE2027.** The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)

<b>FINE2028.</b>	<b>Vision in crisis (6 credits)</b>
<b>FINE2029.</b>	<b>Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)</b>
<b>FINE2030.</b>	<b>Towards the global (6 credits)</b>
<b>FINE2032.</b>	<b>Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)</b>
<b>FINE2033.</b>	<b>Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)</b>

---

### *Geography*

<b>GEOG2080.</b>	<b>Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)</b>
------------------	---

---

### *History*

<b>HIST2011.</b>	<b>Nineteenth-century Europe, Part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2012.</b>	<b>Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2013.</b>	<b>Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: the European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2014.</b>	<b>Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2021.</b>	<b>Nineteenth-century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2042.</b>	<b>The history of sport (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2046.</b>	<b>The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2048.</b>	<b>The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2053.</b>	<b>The Cold War (6 credits)</b>
<b>HIST2056.</b>	<b>Gender and history (6 credits)</b>

---

### *Language Centre*

<b>LANG0001.</b>	<b>Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG0002.</b>	<b>Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG0003.</b>	<b>Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG0004.</b>	<b>Introduction to Spanish and Spanish American literature (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG2002.</b>	<b>French language and culture – II.2 (6 credits)</b>
<b>LANG2003.</b>	<b>French speech and sounds – II.3 (6 credits)</b>
<b>LANG2008.</b>	<b>Übersetzungsübung I (Translation exercise I) (6 credits)</b>
<b>LANG2020.</b>	<b>Landeskunde Deutschland (German area studies) (6 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3036.</b>	<b>French society and cinema – III.2 (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3003.</b>	<b>French/English translation: Practical skills – III.3 (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3004.</b>	<b>French/Chinese translation: Practical skills – III.4 (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3005.</b>	<b>French and business – III.5 (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3008.</b>	<b>Lektürekurs (Reading course) (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3009.</b>	<b>Auszüge aus der deutschen Literatur (Extracts from German literature) (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3010.</b>	<b>Projektkurs (German project) (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3022.</b>	<b>French eastern narratives – III.6 (3 credits)</b>
<b>LANG3023.</b>	<b>Übersetzungsübung II (Translation exercise II) (6 credits)</b>

---

### *Music*

<b>MUSI2003.</b>	<b>University choir 1 (3 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2007.</b>	<b>Western music history 1 (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2008.</b>	<b>Western music history 2 (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2018.</b>	<b>Understanding music (3 credits)</b>

<b>MUSI2020.</b>	<b>Special topics in music 1 (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2021.</b>	<b>Special topics in music 2 (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI2032.</b>	<b>Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (3 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI3012.</b>	<b>Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (3 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI3007.</b>	<b>University choir 2 (3 credits)</b>

---

### *Philosophy*

<b>PHIL2002.</b>	<b>Early modern philosophy (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2010.</b>	<b>Plato (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2035.</b>	<b>Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2085.</b>	<b>Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2110.</b>	<b>Knowledge (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2210.</b>	<b>Metaphysics (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2220.</b>	<b>The mind (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2340.</b>	<b>Moral problems (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2350.</b>	<b>Philosophy of law (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2360.</b>	<b>Political philosophy (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2370.</b>	<b>Aesthetics (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2383.</b>	<b>Modernity and postmodernity (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2390.</b>	<b>Philosophy of religion (6 credits)</b>
<b>PHIL2510.</b>	<b>Logic (6 credits)</b>

---

### *Politics and Public Administration*

<b>POLI0003.</b>	<b>Approaches to foreign policy analysis (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0004.</b>	<b>Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0005.</b>	<b>Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0008.</b>	<b>Comparative foreign policy analysis (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0009.</b>	<b>Comparative politics (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0010.</b>	<b>Democracy and its critics (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0014.</b>	<b>European politics (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0015.</b>	<b>Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0021.</b>	<b>Understanding global issues (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0026.</b>	<b>Marxism and political theory (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0028.</b>	<b>Political economy (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0029.</b>	<b>Political theory (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0039.</b>	<b>Public policy analysis (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0041.</b>	<b>Research methods for politics and public administration (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0043.</b>	<b>The government and politics of the United Kingdom (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0045.</b>	<b>The political economy of the European Union (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0049.</b>	<b>War and peace in international relations (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0050.</b>	<b>Women and politics (6 credits)</b>
<b>POLI0058.</b>	<b>Managing the global economy (6 credits)</b>

---

### *Sociology*

<b>SOCI0001.</b>	<b>A history of social theory (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0005.</b>	<b>Criminal behaviour (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0008.</b>	<b>Culture and society (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0011.</b>	<b>Gender and crime (6 credits)</b>

<b>SOCI0012.</b>	<b>Gender and society (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0014.</b>	<b>Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0021.</b>	<b>Marriage and the family (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0024.</b>	<b>Modern social theory (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0025.</b>	<b>Organizations and society (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0027.</b>	<b>Politics and society (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0028.</b>	<b>Population and society (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0032.</b>	<b>Religion, rituals and myths (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0038.</b>	<b>Social control (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0039.</b>	<b>Social movements (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0042.</b>	<b>Social research methods (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0043.</b>	<b>Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0044.</b>	<b>Sociology of economic life (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0047.</b>	<b>Sociology of punishment (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0054.</b>	<b>Triads and organized crime (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0056.</b>	<b>Criminal justice: Policy and practice (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0057.</b>	<b>Crime and deviance I: An introduction to criminology (6 credits)</b>
<b>SOCI0058.</b>	<b>Crime and deviance II (6 credits)</b>

#### **Optional European Studies courses (not required for the major)**

##### **EUST3002. Special reading course in European Studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

From time to time a special reading course will be offered to final-year students. This course will focus on issues of current or special interest and will be offered to European Studies majors. Students will be required to undertake extensive reading and participate in seminar presentations.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

##### **EUST3003. European Studies dissertation (12 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students in this course will be expected to submit a written dissertation based on research into an aspect of European culture.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

## **FINE ARTS**

The Department of Fine Arts teaches the history and theory of art. European, American, Chinese and Japanese artistic traditions are all examined in depth, and the broader international context of art making is also considered. An introduction to museum studies is also offered. Students may major in Fine Arts, but will also discover many fruitful combinations between Fine Arts courses and those of other Arts and Social Science disciplines.

Prospective majors in Fine Arts must select not less than 48 credits from among those courses offered by the Department in the second and third years, and must take in their final year at least one of the following third year courses: **FINE3001**, **FINE3005** or **FINE3006**. These students must also normally have taken **FINE1001** and **FINE1004** in their first year. Prospective majors who have only taken one of these courses in their first year will normally be required to take either **FINE2001** or **FINE2002** in their second year, however, these courses will not count towards the 48 credits required of all majors in the second and third years.

There are no other specific requirements as to core courses or course combinations for majors, but prospective students are asked to note that individual second and third year courses in the Fine Arts Department may require **FINE1001** or **FINE1004** as prerequisites. Other prerequisites for second- and third-year courses are listed in the course descriptions. In exceptional cases, these requirements may be waived by the Head of Department. All major and other course selections are subject to the approval of the Head of Department.

The courses are generally taught in English, but readings in Chinese art courses may be in Chinese and English.

The form of assessment (i.e. percentage weighting of coursework and/or examination) for each course is specified in the course descriptions. Coursework assessment will be based on the student's performance in tutorials, seminars, written work and other practical work (e.g. studio art activities) as specified by the course instructor.

## **FIRST YEAR LEVEL**

### **FINE1001. Introduction to western art history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to the art of Europe from the periods of ancient Greek and Roman civilization to the art of the twentieth century. Major developments in painting, sculpture and architecture will be studied, with the aim of giving students an understanding of the main characteristics of the art produced, and the relationship of art to the culture in which it was created. No previous knowledge of art history is assumed.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

### **FINE1004. Introduction to Chinese art history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course gives an overview of the development of different forms of Chinese art in history. Students are introduced to the concept of visual analysis and art appreciation. Discussions are based on several generic themes, such as the nature of the pieces, the effects of ideology, and the influence of the ruling dynasties. In the course of the study, the social context under which the art pieces were made is constantly highlighted. No previous knowledge of art history is expected.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

### **FINE1006. Art and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces visual and critical skills for interpreting the art of different cultures from both the past and the present. We examine a variety of themes related to the techniques and functions of art, and we study the way art expresses various moral, social, political, and religious ideas. Students will gain a better understanding of cross-cultural communication and will learn how to analyze the powerful visual culture of the contemporary world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE1007. Introduction to photography theory and practice (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to introduce students to principles of contemporary photography theory and a critical practice of the photographic medium. In addition to the teaching of basic photographic techniques, the course will also discuss how we can assess photographs with critical tools such as aesthetics and cultural theories.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**SECOND YEAR LEVEL****FINE2001 History of the art of Europe (6 credits)**

This course is open only to students who have not taken FINE1001 and who intend to major in Fine Arts. See the entry under FINE1001 for general course description. The coursework will differ from that of FINE1001 and will be commensurate with the ability and experience of second-year students. Assessment : 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**FINE2002 History of the art of China (6 credits)**

This course is open only to students who have not taken FINE1004 and who intend to major in Fine Arts. See the entry under FINE1004 for general course description. The coursework will differ from that of FINE1004 and will be commensurate with the ability and experience of second-year students. Assessment : 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**SECOND AND THIRD YEARS LEVELS**

The following courses are open to both second and third year students. Prerequisites, if required, are stated in the course descriptions. If staffing arrangements permit, the following courses will be offered:

---

**FINE2003. Early Chinese painting (Warring States to Southern Song) (6 credits)**

This course will cover the history of Chinese painting from the Warring States to Southern Song dynasty. With an emphasis on methodology and connoisseurship, it will explore the transformation of forms of expression and styles of periods and individuals, as well as ideological and social factors behind the changes. The relationship of Chinese painting theory to Chinese philosophy, aesthetics, and literature will also be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1004.

---

**FINE2004. Later Chinese painting (Yuan to Qing) (6 credits)**

This course will cover the history of Chinese painting from the Yuan to Qing dynasty. With an emphasis on methodology and connoisseurship, it will explore the transformation of forms of expression and styles of periods and individuals, as well as ideological and social factors behind the changes. The relationship of Chinese painting theory to Chinese philosophy, aesthetics, and literature will also be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1004.

**FINE2005. Twentieth century Chinese art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Taking a general view of the major trends in Chinese art of this century, this course will explore how political, social, and cultural changes have affected the artists' thoughts and practices. Most of the important artists and art schools of this century will be covered.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**FINE2006. A history of Chinese calligraphy and seals (6 credits)**

Chinese calligraphy and seals are two traditional art forms that have a unique history of over three thousand years. This course will provide students with a basic knowledge of how to analyze these art forms, as well as their historical development. The ability to read in Chinese is advantageous for this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2007. Connoisseurship (6 credits)**

The discrimination of authenticity and quality in works of art is essential to the study of art history. This course will lay equal stress on both theoretical study and practical training, and on both class discussion and outside investigation. Through demonstration and discussion of specific cases involving varied media and topics, students will learn how to make a judgement by inference on the authenticity and quality of an art work.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1004.

---

**FINE2008. The poetics of Japanese narrative painting (offered in alternate years) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the origins and emergence of peculiarly Japanese artistic codes in Japanese narrative painting. Topics under review include the tensions born from accommodation of Chinese painting materia, definition of Japanese narratology in painting and its texts, the birth of '*mono no aware*' (the 'ah!-ness of things') and its place in court and Buddhist painting, the dialectics of 'female' and 'male' modes, the functions of light humour, satire and the grotesque. In the case of works produced by groups of designers, editors and painters (such as Illustrations of the Tale of Genji), students will be encouraged to experiment with deconstructive analysis.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2009. Genji's dream: the courtly arts of Heian Japan (offered in alternate years) (6 credits)**

This course highlights the world of the Shining Prince Genji as revealed in the courtly arts of Heian Japan, especially in the 11th and 12th centuries. The princely accomplishments of the romance hero Genji included painting, calligraphy, waka poetry (a medium for social intercourse), design of his mansion and gardens for his various ladies. The course locates the various arts, their history, ideologies, and artistic codes, and proposes a symbiotic relationship among them as a further code. Students will study - as beginners - the manner in which classical *waka* poems are produced as artistic calligraphy, and encouraged to evaluate certain works. No knowledge of Japanese language is necessary.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**FINE2011. Japanese art: the interactive dimension (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course explores certain aspects of artistically defined environmental art, and its associated arts. This includes in particular architecture and garden art in the early and medieval periods of Japanese history, analysis of the nature of exhibitions of art, and exploration of tea-oriented environments and gardens. In all of these situations, it is proposed, a certain kind of audience participation is anticipated, inherent, or built into the overall structure. The course interrogates response to such environments, particularly in garden art, and examines the relevance of aesthetic codes, their social implications, and their myths, metaphysics, or philosophy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2012. Italian Renaissance art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the painting and sculpture of Italy from about 1300 to 1550. Beginning with Giotto's new approach to painting, the course will explore artistic developments in Italy throughout this period, concluding with a study of the art of the High Renaissance. The impact of the Antique and the interest in mathematics, characteristic of the Italian Renaissance, will be among the topics discussed.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisite: FINE1001.

---

**FINE2013. Northern Renaissance art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the art produced in Flanders, France, and Germany between about 1300 and 1550, focusing primarily on painting and printmaking. It will begin with early 14th century illuminated manuscripts and the subsequent development of the International Style. It will then consider Flemish 15th century painting in some detail, concluding with a study of Flemish and German art of the 16th century.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisite: FINE1001.

---

**FINE2014. Baroque art of Italy and Spain (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the art of the Mannerist and Baroque periods in Southern Europe from about 1520 to 1700. The main attention will be placed on 17th century art in Italy and Spain. Particular attention will be given to discussion of the features of naturalism in Baroque art and the impact of the Counter-Reformation on the art of this region.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisite: FINE1001.



**FINE2015. Baroque art of Flanders, the Netherlands, and France (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the art of the Baroque and Rococo periods in Northern Europe from about 1600 to 1750. The main focus will be on 17th century art in Flanders, the Netherlands, and France, with particular attention being paid to the varied subject matter, styles, and conditions of patronage characteristic of each country. The course will conclude with a discussion of Rococo painting in France.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisite: FINE1001.

---

**FINE2020. American art (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys painting, sculpture, photography, and architecture in the United States from European settlement to 1945. The underlying theme will be the forging of a unified democratic nation in the face of great internal diversity. Issues to be considered in relation to art will include Protestant values, democracy, wilderness, racial conflict, capitalism, popular culture, and America's gradual rise to power.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2021. Special problems in Asian art (6 credits)**

This rubric covers courses that may be offered on Asian art from time to time. The details of the course when offered will be published in the Department brochure and other media.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1004.

---

**FINE2022. Special problems in western art (6 credits)**

This rubric covers courses that may be offered on western art from time to time. The details of the course when offered will be published in the Department brochure and other media.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001.

---

**FINE2023. Special studies in the history of art I (6 credits)**

This rubric covers courses that may be offered from time to time. The details of the course when offered will be published in the Department brochure and other media.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2024. The development of Chinese ceramics (6 credits)**

This course surveys the history of Chinese ceramics from the earliest wares of the Neolithic period up to the sophisticated porcelain of the Qing dynasty, considering various aspects and approaches to the subject.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1004.

**FINE2026. The age of revolution: Art in Europe, 1750-1840 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the radical transformation in European art from the age of kings to the age of revolutions, c.1750-1840. Painting, sculpture, and printmaking will be discussed in relation to various historical developments, including the decline of aristocratic culture and Christianity; the rise of science, industry, and democracy; and new, Romantic notions of nature, individuality, nationalism, and primitivism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001.

---

**FINE2027. The formation of modernity: Art in Europe, 1840-1890 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the early formation of modern European visual culture, from Realism to Impressionism. The underlying historical theme will be the rise of bourgeois society. Painting, sculpture, printmaking, and photography will be discussed in the context of related ideological issues such as industrial capitalism, mass media, urban leisure, tourism, new gender roles, and colonialism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001.

---

**FINE2028. Vision in crisis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In art, as in other fields of knowledge, the late 19th century and the early 20th century was a time when pre-existing assumptions were challenged in a radical way. To certain artists in Europe, for instance, illusionistic realism or the conventions of perspective no longer seemed adequate tools for representing the world and our experience of it. Amongst the factors provoking this crisis of vision was an increasing awareness of other cultures and their differing modes of visual representation, and many non-Western artists shared with their Western counterparts this new sense of the relativity of cultural knowledge, although they tended to respond to it in different ways.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004.

---

**FINE2029. Modernity and its discontents (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Although certain 20th century artists can be taken as celebrating the modern, many artists offered instead a critical engagement with the newly-emerging forms of experience they were encountering, or sought various forms of escape from them. While the response of European artists to the modern condition is most well known, artists from other parts of the world were equally engaged with the task of creating an art adequate to the new environment in which they found themselves.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004.

**FINE2030. Towards the global (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Paris has been described as the capital of the 19th century, and indeed one can talk of a European cultural hegemony that lasted until the outbreak of the Second World War. The postwar period, however, saw a migration of cultural authority across the Atlantic to the United States, and with the ending of the Cold War American cultural dominance seemed to become even more deeply entrenched. If the close of the colonial era did not then eliminate the asymmetry of power between Western and non-Western cultures, it did at least alter the conditions for artistic production in the latter. Furthermore, with an increasing pace of globalization at the end of the century, the opportunities for non-Western artists to reach new audiences have expanded enormously.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001 or FINE1004.

---

**FINE2031. The rise of modern architecture in Western culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tracing the development of Western architecture from ancient Greece onward, this course focuses on the 19th and 20th centuries, from Neoclassicism in Washington, D.C. and Haussman's renovation of Paris to the Bauhaus in Germany and the international spread of Modernism and Postmodernism. Emphasis is placed on the way buildings express institutional ideologies, as well as on construction technology and architectural theory. Hong Kong architecture figures prominently throughout.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2032. Art and the portrayal of women (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will consider the representation of women in Western art. The approach will be thematic, and examples ranging from medieval to modern will be considered. Topics will include 'good' women (virgins, saints, mothers, wives) and 'bad' (fallen women, temptresses, witches), as well as the nude and the portrait. Both religious and secular images will be considered.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2033. Cross-cultural interaction in the 19th century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tracing the rise of global visual cultures, this course examines artistic interactions between Western and non-Western cultures brought on by colonialism, war, trade, and scientific exploration in the period 1750-1900. We study how European and American artists viewed the cultures they encountered in China, Japan, India, the Near East and elsewhere, as well as how non-Westerners viewed the West.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1001, FINE1004 or permission of lecturer.

**FINE2034. Hong Kong art workshop (6 credits)**

This course will introduce Hong Kong art and related aspects of Hong Kong visual culture. It will be taught in a workshop format, and will provide the opportunity for students to develop skills in art criticism as well as an understanding of Hong Kong art history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: At least one Fine Arts course.

---

**FINE2035. Photography and the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies the history of photography in the nineteenth century: its invention and technological evolution, its various early practices, and its interactions with other cultural practices. In discussing these topics it also investigates the social, cultural and ideological problems to which the medium gave rise especially in the Western world and the era of modernity. Some introductory practical lessons and field trips are included so that students can have a better understanding of the actual photographic process.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2036. Photography in the twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course investigates the history of photography in the twentieth century. It charts how earlier photographic practices evolved and were transformed in the new era, and traces the workings of new practices such as photojournalism and fashion photography. As modernism and avant-gardism have pervaded twentieth century culture and arts, this course also focuses on how photography responded to these tendencies in different countries. Finally, it considers the medium's role in the age of global culture and digital imaging.

Prerequisite: FINE2035.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2037. Chinese material culture studies (6 credits)**

This course will be a chronological survey of Chinese material culture from the Neolithic period to the Qing dynasty. The history and wealth of Chinese material culture, continuing to the present day, suggests a long tradition of art producing. Through the study of bronze and carvings in jade, stone, wood, lacquer as well as bamboo, students will explore the social, historical and philosophical circumstances surrounding art production. This will show how art was important largely because of its long history and acceptance as a traditional means of expression. Ceramics, taught as an individual subject, will not be included in this course.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**FINE2038. Special studies in the history of art II (6 credits)**

This rubric covers courses that may be offered from time to time. The details of the course when offered will be published in the Department brochure and other media.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### THIRD YEAR LEVEL

The following courses are open only to third year students and will be taught in a seminar format except for FINE3005 and FINE3007.

#### **FINE3001. Perspectives and methodology in Chinese and Japanese art (6 credits)**

This course will focus on art historical methodology and strategies in the fields of Chinese and Japanese art. Students will prepare a seminar paper drawing on knowledge of a certain area, but will further be encouraged to demonstrate a critical approach to broader methodological and theoretical issues.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: Fine Arts majors, or by special permission of the instructors.

---

#### **FINE3003. Museum studies workshop (6 credits)**

This course aims to give students an introduction to the principles and practises of working in an art museum. The course will be conducted at the University Museum and Art Gallery, and students will be given the opportunity to develop curatorial skills by completing projects relating to an art exhibition or other curatorial work. Students majoring in Fine Arts will be given first preference, but other third year students fulfilling the prerequisite may apply.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE1004 for non-majors.

---

#### **FINE3004. Museum studies internship (6 credits)**

This course allows students to work with senior members of the staff of the University Museum and Art Gallery on a project relating to a current exhibition or the museum's permanent collection. The course will further develop the skills taught in FINE3003.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: FINE3003.

---

#### **FINE3005. Dissertation on special topic (12 credits)**

Students with a focus of interest and the approval of a teacher may undertake independent study to produce a paper of some ambition under the supervision of a teacher.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

#### **FINE3006. Art history methodology workshop (6 credits)**

This course is taught in the form of seminars. It requires active participation from students, and is intended for those in their third year who have already engaged seriously with art history during their previous study. It aims to deepen students' understanding of the methods used by art historians by introducing various debates about interpretation. Students are expected to write a paper concerning an area of art history or visual culture of their own choice, in which they demonstrate their sensitivity to questions of method.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: Students should normally have taken at least one Fine Arts course in their first year, and at least two Fine Arts courses (in any subject area) in their second year.

**FINE3007. Independent research project (6 credits)**

Students with a focus of interest and the approval of a teacher may undertake independent study to produce a research paper under the supervision of a teacher.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**GEOGRAPHY**

The prerequisite for admission to courses in the Department of Geography for Arts students is ordinarily a pass in geography at the Advanced Level, or a good pass in geography at the Advanced Supplementary Level. The academic requirement, however, may be waived by the Head of Department in special cases.

**First Year**

The Department offers a new Geography undergraduate curriculum which is designed to assist the students in learning and understanding geographical and environmental-related knowledge and issues within a modern context and perspective. Details on updated course descriptions are available from our website: <http://geog.hku.hk/>.

The first-year Level 100 Geography courses are taught in the form of lectures, discussion classes, fieldwork and practical classes. Each course will be examined by one two-hour written paper at the end of the semester in which the course is taught.

The basic aim of the courses is to provide students who intend to major or otherwise in Geography in their second and third years with a general environmental-geography background and an introduction to geographical methods of inquiry, with a focus on China and the Asia-Pacific region.

First-year students intending to major in Geography in the second- and third-years are required to take at least two Level 100 courses (i.e. a minimum of 12 credits), and are strongly recommended to take 3-5 courses in order to have a wider basic knowledge for their second- and third-year studies.

---

**GEOG1002. Hong Kong: land, people and resources (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with a fundamental understanding of the physical and human environment of Hong Kong with its larger geographical and regional setting. After an introduction to the major physical features, a range of contemporary issues such as demographic structure and changes, economic development, industrialization, urbanization, housing and planning will be examined. It will conclude with a discussion on Hong Kong's future development problems and their possible solutions. This is an independent course which can be taken by students from various disciplines.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**GEOG1003. Contemporary global environmental issues (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Recent decades have been characterized by increasing awareness of environmental issues and the need to come to terms with them. This course introduces the major global environmental issues and links them to contemporary socio-economic and political considerations while maintaining a geographical perspective. The course will examine, in turn, many of the current major environmental issues related to the atmosphere the hydrosphere and the biosphere as well as looking at major threats posed by the environment itself in the form of natural hazards. In addition, the issue of the nuclear threat and the ever-increasing demand for energy are explored. Finally, the matter of sustained development and intelligent management of the planet for this and future generations is addressed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG1005. Map use, reading and interpretation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Maps have been used for centuries to describe spatial patterns and portray association and correlation. Recent developments in digital spatial data handling have changed the environment where maps are used. Maps are no longer confined to the printed format. The objective of this course is to provide an integrated discussion of standard planimetric maps, their uses, and the basic skills necessary to take full advantage of these maps. The lectures will cover fundamental concepts underlying different mapping/analytical techniques, their strengths, limitations, and application settings. The practicals will be devoted to imparting essential computer operating skills to visualize spatial data.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG1006. Natural resources and conservation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The consumption of the Earth's resources has reached an alarming intensity and variety in modern times. The objective is to survey the major issues related to the tenure of human-nature interactions, their current status as well as the prognosis for the future. A synoptic view on the cultural roots of the exploitative utilization of our planet sets the backdrop for a systematic assessment of the different but interrelated components of the resource system. Various abiotic, biotic and abiotic-cum-biotic segments are discussed in the light of their use and misuse, and the possibility for a more enlightened approach towards a sustainable future. Adopting a non-technical approach, this course appeals to students with training in different science or humanity disciplines.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG1011. Introduction to human geography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introductory course about the processes and spatial patterns of human activities in a globalizing world. Important subjects to be discussed will include the development of human geography as a scientific discipline, the processes of globalization, geographies of population, human perception of nature and society, economic development, agriculture and food resources, political geography, urbanization, and regional development. Emphasis will be placed on the changing interrelationships between human society and the natural environment in a global context. The purpose is to assist students to better understand the patterns, processes and problems of human-environment interaction in our globalizing world.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**GEOG1012. Economic and social development in an urbanizing world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the processes and spatial patterns of economic development and social changes in an increasingly urbanizing world. Important subjects to be discussed include the geographical dynamics of economic development, the trend of economic globalization versus local development, the location issue in various economic sectors, geopolitics and the new world order, as well as social and environmental concerns in the urbanization process. Emphasis will be placed on the geographical explanation of economic development and emerging urban issues in this fast changing world. This course can be taken as an independent course or, for students intending to focus on the human dimensions of geographical matters in their second- and third-year studies, it can be taken as a complement to another Level 100 course 'GEOG1011 Introduction to human geography' (offered by Dr. G.C.S. Lin).

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG1015. Introduction to computer applications in geography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course provides basic skills in geography related computer applications to those, who are not yet experienced computer-users. The participants will engage in a project to analyse and visualise geographical data on Hong Kong using software, such as MS Excel and ArcView of ESRI. They will also create a website to present their project results. The seminar is not a systematic and comprehensive course on the programmes used, nor does it replace the Introduction to GIS. It aims at encouraging students of geography to make use of computer-based tools and to understand the related opportunities and problems. As there is no final examination, active participation during class and project related homework is required from every participant.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

***Curriculum Options in Second and Third Years***

The new Geography curriculum provides three **options of subject specialization** - 'Urban & Transport', 'China & the Pacific Rim', and 'Environment & Resources' - for second- and third-year students intending to major in Geography or otherwise. All courses are offered as 6 credit courses except **GEOG3009 Honours dissertation** which is a 12 credit course.

Students can, based on their academic interest and future career development, select one suitable option as their focus for pursuing their Geography major. Under each option, major students are required to take a combination of '**core**' and '**elective**' Level 200 courses, with a minimum total of 48 credits, i.e. 24 credits in each of their second- and third-years of studies. Regardless of which option a major student has chosen, he/she must also take the '**required**' methodological course **GEOG3028 Overseas field trip**. Geography majors can take up to a total of 96 credits in Levels 200 and 300 geography courses in the second- and third-years of study.

Geography major students **must take at least two 'core' courses each** in their second- and third-year of studies. The 'core' courses in one particular option would automatically become 'elective' courses in the other two options so that students can have a wide choice and greater flexibility in their course selection. After taking the necessary number of 'core' and 'required' courses, students are free to select their remaining geography courses from the pool of elective courses.



### ***The 'Urban & Transport' Option***

We live in a rapidly urbanizing world where the time-space dimensions have been immensely compressed by the development of modern transportation systems in the twentieth century. Given that the urbanization process and the development of modern transport systems have brought tremendous impacts on both the physical and human geography of contemporary societies, a focus on urban studies will help to improve our understanding of the changing geography of the world, the Pacific Asian region and Hong Kong. The *'Urban & Transport' Option* caters to individuals who wish to pursue careers in the fields of urban development, urban planning, and transport policy and planning. Students electing the *'Urban & Transport' Option* will be introduced to the principles, processes, and patterns of urban development systems. A broad spectrum of courses included in this option will provide students with a systematic understanding of the basic approaches and key theories of urban change and transport development as well as a thorough training in the application of such knowledge to urban planning, urban environmental management, and transport planning issues in both developed and developing countries. A combination of lectures, tutorials, field-work and directed projects will equip students with analytical and problem-solving skills to pursue careers in the fields of urban development, urban planning, urban environmental management and transport policy and planning.

---

### ***The 'China & the Pacific Rim' Option***

Dramatic social and economic transformation of China, one of the most populous and quickly developing nations of the world, has been a major historical event of the twentieth century that is likely to engender far-reaching impacts on human society in the next millennium. At this historical juncture, demand for knowledge of what is taking place in China and its global implications is greater than ever before. The *'China & the Pacific Rim' Option* responds to such a demand by bringing together a group of well organized courses to address issues that have great theoretical significance and practical applications. Students are introduced to important ideas and advanced techniques for understanding the transformation of China, the role it plays in the world, the interaction between the mainland, Hong Kong, and Taiwan, the locational characteristics of investment and development, and the implications of changes in China for the formulation of effective international business strategy and government policies. Through lectures, field trips, and directed projects, students are trained in a comprehensive and systematic manner to gain essential knowledge and skills capable of identifying, analyzing, and solving real-world problems. The option offers an excellent choice for those who wish to pursue a promising career and explore the tremendous opportunities related to economic development in China.

---

### ***The 'Environment and Resources' Option***

The global environment and society's knowledge and perceptions of it are undergoing rapid changes. A basic tenet of environmental study is that all things are inter-connected, part of a synergistic whole, and that the consequences of disruption in one part have knock-on effects throughout the whole system. Increasingly, human action, for good or ill, is being identified as a key component in the operation of the Earth system and its component parts. The *'Environment and Resources' Option* offers an excellent selection of courses which provide students with the basis for a sound understanding of our current knowledge of environmental systems and processes as well as the integration of the human dimension into the relationship. By means of carefully balanced combinations of lectures, directed projects, fieldwork and self-guided learning, students will be suitably equipped to identify, analyze and provide solutions to everyday practical and contemporary environmental problems. In addition, they will have the opportunity to acquire skills which will enable them to bring a holistic approach to bear in problem-solving and decision-making which is highly valued by discerning employers.

## Coursework Assessment

Most of the courses have a coursework element. The percentage assigned to coursework is indicated at the end of each course description and will be incorporated into the final grade for each course as appropriate.

## Fieldwork

For second-year students majoring in Geography in 2002-2003, they must take the **required** methodological course '**GEOG3028 Overseas field trip**' which would take place in the summer of 2003 after they have completed their second year of study. This course is assessed on the basis of a field trip report.

## Honours Dissertation

It is an option for major students to take the 12 credits course **GEOG3009 Honours dissertation**. Students are strongly advised to do this course as it provides them with a good opportunity and valuable training in pursuing a piece of research work of their own choice through their own efforts and under the close supervision of a teacher. Students pursuing '**GEOG3009 Honours dissertation**' should also consider taking the 6-credits course - '**GEOG2022 Methodological issues in geography**' - in their second year of study since this course would provide them with a useful training for the dissertation course.

## List of Level 200 and 300 courses

Listed below is a table showing the number of Level 200 and 300 courses which the students could take in their second- and third-year of studies in the next two academic years 2002-03 and 2003-04. The list of courses is provisional and may be subject to changes as a result of timetable constraints, staff teaching loads, and/or decisions made by the Department.

	Curriculum Option		
	Urban	China	Environment
<b>Level 200 courses</b>			
GEOG2001 Economic geography #	C	C	E
GEOG2002 China: development issues *	E	C	E
GEOG2003 Japan, Korea, and Southeast Asia #	C	C	E
GEOG2004 Atmospheric environment and global climate *	E	E	C
GEOG2005 Biogeography and ecosystem modifications	C	E	C
GEOG2006 Earth surface processes and landforms	E	C	C
GEOG2011 Introduction to geographic information systems	C	E	E
GEOG2012 Survey and statistical techniques in geography	C	C	C
GEOG2013 Sustainable development	E	E	C
GEOG2014 Countryside recreation and management *	E	E	C
GEOG2015 Environmental monitoring and assessment	C	E	C
GEOG2018 Transport geography	C	E	E
GEOG2019 Environmental GIS *	E	E	C

# = Course to be offered in biennial odd year, i.e. in 2003-04, 2005-06 and so on.

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

C = Core course; E = Elective course; R = Required course.

	Curriculum Option		
	Urban	China	Environment
GEOG2020 Geography of wine #	E	E	E
GEOG2021 Physical environment of China	E	C	C
GEOG2022 Methodological issues in geography	E	E	E
GEOG2026 Principles and practice of ecotourism	E	C	C
GEOG2027 China's tourism resources and management	E	C	C
GEOG2028 Population geography	C	E	E
GEOG2030 Global development *	E	C	E
GEOG2036 Global environmental change: science, impact and policy *	E	E	C
GEOG2037 Soils and the environment *	E	E	C
GEOG2038 Climate change and the environment #	E	E	C
GEOG2042 Urban hydrology and water quality #	C	E	C
GEOG2045 Retail location *	C	C	E
GEOG2048 Environmental hazards *	E	E	C
GEOG2049 GIS in transport planning and management #	C	E	E
GEOG2050 Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations #	E	E	C
GEOG2051 Port and airport development #	C	C	E
GEOG2052 Vegetation in urban landscape management #	C	E	C
GEOG2053 Philosophical issues in geography	E	E	E
GEOG2054 Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong	C	E	E
GEOG2055 Water resources and management *	E	E	C
GEOG2056 Tourism and the shrinking world	C	E	C
GEOG2057 Leisure and recreation in modern society	C	C	E
GEOG2059 Geography of information technology	C	C	E
GEOG2060 An introduction to archaeology	E	E	E
GEOG2061 Cultural heritage management and tourism	E	E	E
GEOG2062 China: the land and the people	C	C	E
GEOG2063 Energy and environment #	E	E	C
GEOG2065 Urban planning: principles and practices	C	C	E
GEOG2070 Coast and slope environments *	E	E	C
GEOG2072 Environmental management: impact assessment	E	E	C
GEOG2073 Principles of environmental management #	E	E	C
GEOG2077 China: environment and sustainable development *	E	C	C
GEOG2078 Urban geography I: growth, function and pattern of cities	C	C	E
GEOG2079 Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models	C	C	E
GEOG2080 Regional geography of Europe	C	E	E
GEOG2081 Sustainable urban transport	C	C	E
GEOG2082 Economic development in rural China	C	E	E
EASC1000 Earth's dynamic systems (taught by the Department of Earth Sciences)	E	E	E

# = Course to be offered in biennial odd year, i.e. in 2003-04, 2005-06 and so on.

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

C = Core course; E = Elective course; R = Required course.

Level 300 courses

	Curriculum Option		
	Urban	China	Environment
GEOG3009 Honours dissertation (12 credits, available to Geography majors only)	C	C	C
GEOG3027 Directed project	C	C	C
GEOG3028 Overseas field trip	R	R	R
GEOG3029 World urbanization: trends and policies	C	C	E

**Level 200 Courses****GEOG2001. Economic geography # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introductory course about the basic concepts and models in economic geography. Emphasis is placed on the process of globalization and its impacts on industrial location, trade, land use, spatial interaction, and regional development. The purpose is to understand why economic activities are located where they are. Both topical and regional issues of economic geography are discussed and economic development at the global, national, and local scales are examined.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**GEOG2002. China: development issues \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A course about the evolving economic landscape of China. Emphasis is placed on development strategies, agriculture, industry, transport, trade, and urban and regional development since 1949. Economic and spatial changes taking place in the post-reform era will be assessed. The purpose is to assist students to better understand the process of economic restructuring and spatial transformation in the context of a socialist developing country. Students wishing to take this course must take or have taken the co-requisite/pre-requisite course **GEOG2062. China: the land and the people**.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**GEOG2003. Japan, Korea and Southeast Asia # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is designed to provide an overview of contemporary geographical issues in the major sub-regions of the newly emerging 'Pacific-Asian' region: Japan, Korea, and Southeast Asia from the historical, geographical, social, economic, and environmental perspectives. Principal topics of discussion include population growth, economic development, and problems associated with rapid industrialization and urbanization such as environmental degradation and regional disparities.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

# = Course to be offered in biennial odd year, i.e. in 2003-04, 2005-06 and so on.

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2004. Atmospheric environment and global climate \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is divided into three major sections. In the first the basic characteristics and features of the atmospheric environment are examined from the viewpoint of the basic physical and dynamical processes which occur in the atmosphere and between the atmosphere and the underlying surface. Thereafter, in the second section, both the spatial and temporal dimensions of the resulting climate are explored at a range of scales to provide an understanding of the link between the processes occurring in the climate system and the diversity of climatic conditions which occur on Earth. A special section is devoted to the climates of China. In the last section, various means of reconstructing and modelling the climate system are explored with a view to understanding the nature of past climates and the variety of potential future climates that might be possible.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2005. Biogeography and ecosystem modifications (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces students to the basic concepts of biogeography by studying the structure and functioning of natural ecosystems and their extensive modifications by human activities. It provides a comprehensive foundation on basic ecological concepts, including structure and organization of ecosystems, energy flow and nutrient cycling, evolution of the biosphere, and ecosystem succession and changes. Some special issues of ecosystem management of relevance to nature conservation and protection are then expounded, including species interactions, biotic dispersal and migration, fire as a natural-cum-anthropogenic factor, continental drift and Pleistocene Glaciation, domestication and agricultural origin, the pervasive ecological impacts of modern agriculture and urbanization, and the application of island biogeography theory to habitat and species conservation. This is a course of general appeal to students with different backgrounds and dispositions.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2006. Earth surface processes and landforms (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a core element in physical environmental study. The course provides a systematic description and analysis of earth surface landscape and the processes that create them. Since earth landsurface is located at the interface of the Earth's lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere and biosphere, this study is closely related to a wide range of disciplines of natural environments. Topics discuss the landforms and their processes in different environments, including slope, fluvial, coastal, glacial and arid locations. The landforms created by tectonic movement and the techniques in geomorphology also are involved.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2011. Introduction to geographic information systems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the computer-assisted techniques of geographic data analysis, collectively known as GIS, which involve the overlaying and merging of spatial data layers. The principles of such an approach will be discussed focusing on the nature of the spatial data, raster and vector data structures, data transformation and geocoding, modeling techniques, and accuracy evaluation of spatial databases. Students must complete a simple project embodying the application of the GIS concept in a real-life situation.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2012. Survey and statistical techniques in geography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces students to the use of surveys and (spatial and non-spatial) statistics in geography. The aim is to provide students with a basic understanding of research methodology and techniques commonly used in the discipline. Following a discussion of the uses, implementation and limitations of surveys, various descriptive and inferential statistics of spatial concentration, associations and autocorrelation are introduced. Underlying concepts and theories are illustrated with practical applications drawn extensively from both physical and human geography. Classroom teaching is supplemented by computer laboratory sessions and project work.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2013. Sustainable development (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course evaluates the links between environmental protection and economic development. The world must manage its natural and environmental resources to meet the human needs of the present while at the same time preserving these resources for future generations. The course introduces students to different views on how human society can achieve the goal of economic growth without depleting the Earth's capital and jeopardizing the planet's life support system. It aims to enhance students' understanding of the issues relating to sustainable development. Although the course cannot provide complete answers to the issues, it helps develop students' ability of critical thinking and suggest promising directions in which answers may be sought.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2014. Countryside recreation and management (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Expansion in leisure time has led to an associated increase in recreation. The countryside can provide a range of activities and attractions. The course examines the countryside as a resource and looks at planning and management issues. The provision of leisure will also be examined. Special case studies of National Parks in the USA and UK, along with Country Parks in Hong Kong will be undertaken. Recreation around urban areas will also be studied. Competing claims for rural land and conflicts resulting from rural recreation will also be examined.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**GEOG2015. Environmental monitoring and assessment (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course is divided into two parts. The first part deals with basic environmental monitoring methodology and techniques, which are how to obtain and analyse information on the existence and concentration of substances in the environment, either naturally occurring or from anthropogenic sources. The second part provides a basic concept and nature of environmental assessment (EA or EIA), an exploration of best practice in EA and a description of EA procedures.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2018. Transport geography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides an understanding of the spatial structures and development of transport systems from a people-oriented geographical approach. This approach emphasizes the role of people in determining the evolution and use of transport systems and the role of the transportation systems in serving and changing our daily life through improving accessibility and mobility. The course will cover the fundamentals of geographical analysis on transport, the analysis on transport demand, supply and regulations, and the relationship between transport and development. Case studies of airports, ports, and urban transport networks provide explanations about the mechanisms and dynamics of transport systems in different geographical situations, and how they interact with local and global development.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2019. Environmental GIS \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the methods of overlaying and merging of spatial data layers in environmental monitoring and decision making. The principles of such an approach will be discussed focusing on the nature of environmental data (particularly the raster data structure and remote sensing images), data transformation and geocoding, modeling techniques, and accuracy evaluation of spatial databases. Students must complete a simple project embodying the application of the GIS concept in an environmental situation.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2020. Geography of wine # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

There is an intimate relationship between geography and wine - where a wine comes from determines its quality, style and taste. This is principally because of the importance of the site and size of the vineyard, its soil, slope, rainfall, sunshine; as well as the nature of the cultivation practices, choice of grape and methods of winemaking. This course first examines the history and evolution of winemaking and the fundamentals of the art and science of oenology to provide the student with a firm foundation for understanding the differences among the wide variety of wines produced worldwide. The remainder is dedicated to exploring the different wine regions of the world and the unique characteristics of each which give their products their distinctive features.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2021. Physical environment of China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course firstly provides an explanation of basic natural environmental elements of China. Based on understanding and distribution of these elements, Chinese physical environment is then regionalized and the individual environmental regions are discussed in detail. The course also involves utilization and transformation of natural environment since ancient time. Major environmental problems in different regions will be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2022. Methodological issues in geography (6 credits)**

The intent of this course is to guide students through the process of identifying, and developing a research/dissertation proposal. Weekly course meetings are intended to facilitate successful pursuit of research/dissertation work. The course is structured to step through the process of developing a research topic in a manner that insures development of a defensible research proposal. The primary tangible objective of the course is the production and defense of a research pre-proposal. The subject of this pre-proposal is to be identified preferably in consultation with each participant's formal supervisor. Each participant will then pursue the necessary steps to evolve the knowledge needed to defend this proposal.

Assessment: 60% project, 40% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.



**GEOG2026. Principles and practice of ecotourism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Ecotourism is the result of increasing interest amongst consumers in exploring the natural world as an alternative to more conventional holidays, along with a desire to reduce the environmental and cultural impact of their activities. This course introduces to students the basic principles and practices of ecotourism, including its prospects and problems from the points of view of host populations, tourist guests, environmentalists and tourism organisations. It leads students to examine the delicate interactions between tourism and the ecosystem by studying cases from five continents. It also encourages them to explore the prospects of ecotourism development in China through examining ecotourism practice in the country.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2027. China's tourism resources and management (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides a comprehensive introduction to China's tourism resources and management. Through the study of the works by a multidisciplinary group of scholars, it explores China's burgeoning tourism industry. Students are encouraged to trace the historical evolution of China's development policies regarding the country's tourism resource and management, as well as the organisations of the industry including the hotel business and hospitality.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2028. Population geography (6 credits)**

This course provides the student with a basic understanding of the forces bringing about population change. Students will be introduced to the three fundamental demographic variables, fertility, mortality and migration, and how these interact to generate changes in population structure. Marriage patterns and family formation are considered in intercultural contexts. The basic factors accounting for population distribution and redistribution will be outlined. The relationship between population and the environment is a central theme and due consideration will be given to ideas of overpopulation on the one hand and to population growth as a necessary condition for human development on the other. Models of the demographic transition and of the interaction between migration and fertility will be examined. Specific attention will be paid to the ageing of human populations, to population policies and to the impact of diseases such as HIV/AIDS to give a comprehensive introduction to the major issues facing the world's population as it moves into the 21st century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester, and taught over a period of 6 weeks.

**GEOG2030. Global development \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course explains the processes of globalization and discusses its important implications for national and regional development. Special emphasis is placed on the interactions of modern transnational corporations (TNCs) and the nation states. Case studies are drawn from different sectors of the economy and different regions of the world. Major issues such as international trade and resource transfer, circuit of capital, product life cycle, technological innovations, the new international division of labour and transnational integration are addressed. This course is valuable to students who are interested in development studies, urbanization and public policy.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2036. Global environmental change: science, impacts, and policy \* (6 credits)**

*(not offered in 2002-03)*

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to advance students' understanding of the scientific issues of global environmental change (GEC) and the implications of GEC for sustainable development (SD). The course will begin with identifying some major problems in GEC such as global warming, stratospheric ozone depletion, acid rain, loss of biological diversity, deforestation, and land degradation. A range of concepts in relation to GEC and SD will be introduced, and major factors and processes influencing GEC will be described. This will be followed by identifying the relationship between GEC and SD. Various integrated research frameworks representing functions and interactions of a wide range of components in economic and environmental systems will be presented. Several case studies across the globe will be presented to identify the major challenges in the areas of data collection, scenario setting, and development of appropriate methods. While this course deals with the science of GEC, its focus is on the human-dimensions of GEC.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2037. Soils and the environment \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to soils as an integral component of the environment. It provides a broad foundation to basic concepts of soil as a natural body by assessing systematically the mineral and organic composition as well as their related properties. The physical organization of soils in the form of structure and its manipulation by humankind in the form of tillage are then elucidated. Topics on the ability of soils to supply nutrients for plant growth, the use of different forms of chemical and organic fertilizers, and contamination of soils by pollutants, are then covered. The importance of soil moisture and their maintenance at an optimal state are explained in the context of drainage and irrigation. The general degradation of soils due to human-accelerated erosion and other destructive activities are evaluated together with the prospects for proper ecological rehabilitation. The course contents and presentation are designed to cater to students with either arts or science backgrounds.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2038. Climate change and the environment # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course has as its primary concern climatic conditions on Earth and their interactions with life and human activities. It will focus on climate change, since to deal sensibly with questions raised concerning future climatic conditions and evaluation of their impact on environment and society, it is essential to understand the nature of the climate system and what causes it to change. In particular, the impact of human activities on the climate system will be set in perspective alongside the background of natural changes in the climate of our planet. Issues associated with societal decisions taken today and their potential impact on climate in the next century will also be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2042. Urban hydrology and water quality # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to provide students with appropriate knowledge about water in the city. It starts with an introduction to the two water cycles in the city: the natural and man-made systems. The modification of the hydrologic cycle in the system is discussed along with the water supply and drainage systems. Hydrologic problems in the city such as flooding and subsidence are also examined. Water quality of both natural and man-made water cycle systems are also investigated.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2045. Retail location \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces the basic principles and components of the retail system with the emphasis on the spatial pattern of demand and the value of location to various actors - the economic basis of location decision. The spatial structure of commercial activities are described and explained at both the settlement and the metropolitan scale with an eye on the location decisions of retail chains and developers. Students will learn also the most widely used procedures in store location studies and are urged to evaluate these techniques in terms of the retail chain's strategies and requirements in a local setting.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

# = Course to be offered in biennial odd year, i.e. in 2003-04, 2005-06 and so on.

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2048. Environmental hazards \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines a range of environmental hazards of geological, geomorphological, atmospheric, biological and human origin focussing on their origins, characteristics and impacts on human society. It will also deal with the responses available to different societies to deal with these hazards including disaster relief, loss sharing and event modification adjustments as well as comprehensive hazard planning and management principles. Where practicable local and regional examples will be used as illustrations.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2049. GIS in transport planning and management # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The increased complexity and rapid development of transport network warrant the use of computerized techniques to undertake traffic control, monitoring, and analysis and planning. GIS is emerging as a valuable tool in transport-related areas that involve logistics and use of transportation services. This course covers the requirements and basic methods of constructing a transport database for the management of infrastructure or logistical problems, and for transportation-related services such as delivery and emergency routing. Extensive information and hands-on training in event routing, address matching, hotlinking and the use of data libraries using selected software are presented.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2050. Modern environmentalism: society-environment relations # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course presents an introduction to environmentalism, which encompasses a set of beliefs and activities which inform and flow from a concern with the environment. Environmentalism has begun to assert itself globally (since the 1960s/1970s) and locally (from the late 1980s) as a significant force in response to, and sometimes influencing, patterns of development. This course will trace the emergence of environmentalism at both the global and local levels. It will examine the evolving linkages between environmentalism and some central societal issues such as social justice, poverty, and gender. The responses of the business sector to increasing public concern for the environment, as well as mounting opposition to environmentalism, will be considered. The course will conclude with a discussion on various manifestations of environmentalism in Hong Kong to illustrate the complex relations between society and environment in a compact and high-density metropolitan milieu.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

# = Course to be offered in biennial odd year, i.e. in 2003-04, 2005-06 and so on.

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2051. Port and airport development # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Port and airport are regarded in transport geography as two nodal development forms in multi-modal transport systems. This course provides a basic understanding of port and airport operations, and how these two forms of nodal transport infrastructure interact with other transport components and with urban and regional development. Examples drawn from different parts of the world will be discussed in detail and students are required to examine the local cases through field trips.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2052. Vegetation in urban landscape management # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to introduce students to trees as the most dominant element of the natural-green compartment of an urban ecosystem. As prominent landscape features and ecological contributors to biodiversities in human settlements, trees are surveyed with respect to composition and structure, environmental conditions for their existence, multiple benefits and functions that they can bring to city inhabitants, and general pattern of greenspaces in cities. Various stress factors dampening tree vigour in the trying urban environment in the above- and below-ground realms, and the resulting arboricultural problems, are considered. The practical management of trees in the urban landscape is elaborated with reference to species composition and selection to match different site conditions, tree planting techniques and subsequent care, tree preservation and transplanting, and the assessment and valuation of urban trees. By adopting a non-technical approach, students with a science or an arts background with an interest in the natural aspects of cities and practical landscape management are targeted.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2053. Philosophical issues in geography (6 credits)**

A seminar about the concepts and theories of geographic research. Course contents include the changing interpretation of major theoretical issues in the discipline of geography. The evolution of geographic thought will be reviewed and major trends in current geographic research will be discussed. The purpose is to expose students to various schools of thought in the geographic discipline and assist students to develop critical and analytical capability. This course will involve extensive readings and active participation in the form of both oral and written presentation.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**GEOG2054. Urban planning in practice in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

On the assumption that students would have some basic understanding of urban planning in general, or at least have interest in the work of the urban planning profession, this course will discuss selected aspects about urban planning in practice in Hong Kong. It will first introduce the geographical and other factors affecting urban planning in this city. This will be followed by discussions on a number of specific issues which have significant influence on urban planning decisions in this territory - particularly population growth, housing problems, development density, changes in its economic structure, and concerns about the environment. Two major urban planning topics will then be examined - new towns and urban renewal. The planning system, the planning legislation and implementation mechanism specially formulated for the Hong Kong situation will be explained in some details. The course will end with glimpses into the future development of this territory.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2055. Water resources and management \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is to provide an introduction to water as a resource and the drainage basin hydrological cycle. It begins with an introduction to water as a resource and the drainage basin hydrological cycle. The second part of the course focuses upon changing demand for water and explores possible solutions to the water problem. The impact of man upon runoff and groundwater is studied. Finally, water quality including pollution and its impact upon water supply is examined.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2056. Tourism and the shrinking world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides a comprehensive introduction to the tourism system in the global context. With a balanced coverage of the whole range of components within the tourism industry, it explores all aspects of both the private and public businesses related to tourism, such as theories, planning, environmental concerns, operations, and the interrelationships among the many tourism businesses. The material covered is intended to offer students knowledge of the tourism system, enable them to apply basic tourism concepts to various projects and problems, and help them to develop a career in the tourism industry.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2057. Leisure and recreation in modern society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an overview of the broad field of recreation and leisure, emphasizing the understanding of various leisure phenomena. As such, it provides the students with an introductory understanding of the nature and scope of leisure, leisure behaviour and affiliated recreation activity. It also reviews relationships between leisure and space, place, time, play, work, family, education, ethnicity, gender, and environment.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2059. Geography of information technology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is about the spatial implications of 'convergent information technology' (IT), broadly defined as computers and telecommunications. It begins by exploring the historical roots and geographical spread of IT throughout the world since the introduction of the Internet in the 1970s. The course proceeds to examine IT as spatial systems. The geographical concept of 'innovation milieu' is introduced as the theoretical framework for analyzing the experiences of the Silicon Valley and Japan's technopolis programme. Students are also exposed to the important concepts of the 'information cities', 'electronic highways' and 'wired cities'. The ways in which all these theories and concepts can be applied in the future IT development of Hong Kong are examined.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2060. An introduction to archaeology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How do you know where you are going until you know where you have been? This course will introduce students to the role archaeology has played in the construction of humanity's history and prehistory. It is intended to be a broad survey of the discipline, its discoveries, scientific and analytical tools and applications. The course will assist students in recognising new cultural dimension within the landscape around them and provide a sound basis for further study here or abroad.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2061. Cultural heritage management and tourism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Understanding the relationship between cultural heritage management and tourism is important for planning and managing tangible cultural heritage in a sustainable manner. The course examines the underlying principles, goals and concepts that drive current cultural heritage management and tourism activity around the world. It will provide students with a framework for analysing the complementary and competing demands made by conservation and tourism of tangible cultural heritage. How such demands arise during the planning and development of a heritage attraction will be discussed throughout the course using examples from five continents.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**GEOG2062. China: the land and the people (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introductory course about the evolving physical, cultural and political landscape of China. Emphasis is placed on (a) the natural environment and physical setting for development; (b) historical geography and evolution of the landscape; (c) the political system and post-1949 development; and (d) the growth and spatial distribution of population. The purpose is to assist students to better understand the process of economic restructuring and spatial transformation in the context of a rapidly growing socialist country. This course is the co-requisite/pre-requisite for **GEOG2002. China development issues**.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2063. Energy and environment # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will provide a fundamental understanding of the relationships between energy and mineral resources exploitation and major environmental problems. It will involve studies of renewable and non-renewable energy and mineral resources, their abundance and distribution, production and consumption patterns, and factors that affecting the formulation of energy and mineral exploitation policies. Energy and mineral conversion technology will be briefly introduced, and followed by discussion on environmental impacts caused by large scale consumption of energy and mineral resources, in particular, fossil fuels. Special attention will be directed to major energy related environmental problems, such as, urban smog, acid rain and greenhouse effect.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2065. Urban planning: principles and practices (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the subject of urban planning. It will first discuss the significance and objectives of urban planning, relating the rise of this profession to the changing configurations of our increasingly urbanizing world. Then, drawing upon primarily the experiences of the United States, some of the major concepts and issues relating to contemporary urban planning practice will be deliberated. These include competing planning theories on the planning process, the legal basis of planning as well as the interrelationships between planning, politics and social issues. The questions of land use planning, urban design, urban renewal, and environmental planning will be highlighted and experiences from the United States and Hong Kong will be discussed and contrasted to illustrate the complexity of urban planning issues in different geographical, political and social settings. Students are strongly encouraged to take one of the basic foundation courses on urban geography before enrolling in this course.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---



**GEOG2070. Coast and slope environments \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course brings together material vital to any attempts to understand and manage our coasts and slopes and will be of interest to all those concerned with the environments and their management. The aim of the course is to develop a basic understanding of coast and slope management system. It involves a basic study on the natural processes, including their landscape formation and evolution, and the physical, ecological and cultural systems of slopes and coasts. The current issues and problems in coastal and slope areas will be discussed, such as landslide, coastal erosion and land reclamation. The management methodology in the areas will be introduced with focus on Hong Kong and regional cases. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2072. Environmental management: impact assessment (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The purpose of this course is to discuss the role of Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) studies in environmental decision-making process and as a means for better environmental management. The major components, processes, and attributes to EIA systems will be discussed throughout the lectures. The course will also introduce different methodologies in planning and managing of an EIA study. Applications of EIA system in the local context will be discussed in detail and illustrated by real-life examples mainly from Hong Kong.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2073. Principles of environmental management # (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The purpose of this course is to highlight some major aspects in environmental decision-making and to provide means for better environmental management. The course will introduce a range of concepts and methods in studying environmental management. The major components, processes, and attributes to environmental management process will be discussed in the course. The market and government regulations associated with environmental management will also be presented. Considering the complex and dynamic nature of the environmental management process, applications of environmental, social, and economic methods in environmental management are discussed in detail and illustrated by real-life examples mainly from Hong Kong, and mainland China. Integrated approaches for identifying desirable policy options in environmental decision-making are also introduced.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

# = Course to be offered in biennial odd year, i.e. in 2003-04, 2005-06 and so on.

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2077. China: environment and sustainable development \* (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Due to its geographic characteristics and its large population size, China is prone to natural resources degradation. Environmental problems have been accelerated by the rapid economic growth of recent years, high intensity of energy use, particularly in the industrial sector, and economic and pricing policies that did not take into account the intrinsic market value of the resources. These factors combine to cause over exploitation of natural resources. This course comprises three main sections. Following the introduction, Section I provides an overview of the state of the natural environment of the country. Section II focuses on the institution, legislative and administrative framework for environment protection and nature conservation. Finally, Section III discusses the government's strategy for the environment and sustainable development as spelled out in recent Five-Year plans and China's Agenda 21.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2078. Urban geography I: growth, function and pattern of cities (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is one of the two basic courses on urban geography. It covers basic topics of the forces and patterns of urbanization, central place theories, functions of cities, rank size rule, primacy and urban systems, and new urbanization features such as the world city and Extended Metropolitan Regions. It is basic to the understanding of urban and regional development issues and problems.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2079. Urban geography II: city structure and urban land use models (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is one of the two basic courses on urban geography. It deals with conventional urban land use models and the cultural and modern forces that shape the urban internal structures of different regions of today. It covers the conventional urban land use models, social areas, CBD, urban industrial location, urban renewal and the rural-urban fringe, urban structures of colonial cities, African cities, Islamic cities, Latin American cities, Chinese and Soviet cities, as well as the new city in the Information Age. The course will be useful for urban administration, planning and marketing.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

\* = Course to be offered in biennial even year, i.e. in 2002-03, 2004-05 and so on.

**GEOG2080. Regional geography of Europe (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Whereas physically Europe could arguably be regarded as just a part of Asia, it distinguishes itself culturally. So, the course first tries to define Europe and describe its characteristics. It does this by looking at cultures, landscapes and especially the cities. The fascinating thing about Europe is that as diverse historically, culturally and economically as it is, it chose to overcome differences and to actively engage in an unprecedented integration process. In its second part the course looks at this process and its political, economic and spatial implications. It links the European experience to globalisation and to integration processes in Asia. The last part of the course then explores the recent development of selected regions within Europe. Apart from introducing a unique continent to the participants the course provides an understanding of interrelated political and regional developments.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**GEOG2081. Sustainable urban transport (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces a new approach to apply the concept of sustainability to urban transport. It provides basic knowledge about the operation of urban transportation systems, urban transport planning and policy. Trends in population and urbanization will be associated closely with the patterns of travel behavior and demand, transport technology, and energy use. Personal mobility and accessibility in the urbanized developed and developing worlds will be explained with cases over the globe. An introduction of trends in intercity travel and freight mobility bring this course further with a regional context, and examples are drawn from the Pearl River Delta as well as other mega-city regions.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**GEOG2082. Economic development in rural China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

China is still largely an agricultural country with an overwhelmingly rural population. This course examines China's rural and agricultural development issues from both developmental and geographical perspectives. It provides an in-depth insight into Chinese transformation in agricultural and rural sectors over the past five decades. It focuses on three parts of knowledge: basic theories in rural and agricultural development, existing condition and situation of Chinese agricultural production and the rural economy, and hot topics of debates on contemporary reform and development in Chinese countryside. Agricultural and rural problems, government policies and the associated impacts will be analyzed along with natural environment and condition. The course emphasizes the training of critical thinking and comprehensive analytical skills, as well as practical problem-solving ability. The course is primarily organized into three parts: lectures, seminars and a fieldtrip. Part I is lectured by the instructor of the course, Part II are seminars presented by students, by topics and in groups, and Part III is a field excursion to China.

Assessment: 40% coursework; 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**EASC1000. Earth's dynamic systems (6 credits)**

Based on the idea that the Earth operates as a number of dynamic systems, this course will introduce students to how our planet works, from the basic building blocks of rocks and minerals, to the unifying concept of plate tectonics. Topics include: rocks and minerals; the rock cycle; the history of life on Earth; geologic time and stratigraphy; plate tectonics; and environmental geology.

The course consists of 2 hours lectures per week for 12 weeks; Practicals: 2 hours per week for 12 weeks; 1 full day field trip.

Assessment: One two-hour written examination (50% weighting) and coursework assessment including a practical test (50% weighting).

---

**Level 300 courses****GEOG3009. Honours dissertation (12 credits)**

The basis of the honours dissertation should normally be the analysis of a problem through fieldwork or through library documentary study under the supervision of an assigned teacher. The object of the dissertation is for students to demonstrate a mastery of geographical field and practical techniques within the scope of the chosen study. Studies undertaken should be based on courses taken in the second-year. Staff may specify subjects considered suitable for study. *The dissertation course begins in the January of the second-year of study and must be completed by January of the third-year.* The completed dissertation should be typed with double-line spacing on A4 sheets, and not exceeding 10,000 words in length (excluding figures and tables).

Assessment: 100% dissertation.

---

**GEOG3027. Directed project (6 credits)**

The basis of the directed project should normally be the analysis of a problem through fieldwork. The object of the directed project is for students to demonstrate a mastery of geographical field and practical techniques for a well-bound topic. Projects undertaken should be based on courses taken in the second year. Staff may specify topics considered suitable for small-scale investigation. Internship are subject to availability and interview by prospective employers arranged by the Department. Students are required to turn in a written report, typed with double-line spacing on A4 sheets and not exceeding 3,500 words in length (excluding figures and tables). An oral presentation of their completed work will be scheduled in the first week of the following semester.

Assessment: 80% Written report (and employer assessment in the case of internship), 20% oral presentation.

No teaching is required for this course. Students must submit completed report by the first week of December and give an oral presentation in the first week of the following semester.

---

**GEOG3028. Overseas field trip (6 credits)**

This course is open **ONLY** to geography major students and requires them to complete one 'two weeks' overseas residential field camp in the summer after the second-year of study, and to produce a field work report on the field trip which will be assessed by the teachers leading the field trip groups.

**IMPORTANT NOTICE:** Geography majors who have participated in this course and who subsequently change their course enrolment in such a way that they would no longer be Geography majors will be deemed to have failed to meet the requirements of this course and so will be 6 credits short for their degree requirement.

Assessment: 100% field report.

### **GEOG3029. World urbanization: trends and policies (6 credits)**

The course examines the divergent forces shaping urbanization and growth of different parts of the world and the responses of various national governments to such dynamics and their consequences. It will cover the uni-dimensional and multi-dimensional schools, world city concept, the extended metropolitan region and exo-urbanization. It provides a good foundation for advanced and professional studies in human geography, planning and social sciences in general.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

### **Examination**

Each course will be examined by a two-hour paper except those courses which are assessed by 100% coursework. In addition to the formal written examination, some courses may also involve practical and/or oral examinations.

## **HISTORY**

Courses in the Department are open both to B.A. students who wish to major in History and to other students in the Faculty of Arts who are not taking, or intending to take, History as a major. Students from the Faculty of Social Sciences and other faculties are also welcome in most courses offered by the Department, and an A-Level examination result in History is **not** a prerequisite for any first-year course.

First year students intending to major in History are required to take a minimum of 12 credit units in history. Students normally take **HIST1006. Foundations of the modern world: The West in the nineteenth century** and **HIST1011. Foundations of the modern world: Qing China**. Students intending to major in History may also take **HIST1004. Workshop in historical research**, but this is not a prerequisite for the major. They may also take **HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies**, which satisfies the University's IT requirement.

In addition to the two foundation courses, there are four other first year courses which may be offered: **HIST1008. The world at war**, **HIST1009. The twentieth-century world**, **HIST1010. An introduction to European history and civilisation** and **HIST1012. From imperial to colonial: nineteenth century Hong Kong**.

### **First-year Courses**

#### **HIST1003. Information technology for historical studies (3 credits)**

This course will satisfy the requirements for the Information Technology component of the first-year curriculum. Students will learn a range of information technology skills within the framework of the historical discipline and will consider how best to apply information technology developments both critically and creatively in the pursuit of their historical studies. Students will be exposed to a variety of learning situations, including the web-based 'electronic textbook' which has been specially developed for first-year History students.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST1004. Workshop in historical research (6 credits)**

The research skills and methodologies used by historians are based on the critical analysis of primary and secondary sources. Competency in these skills and an acquaintance with the various methodologies of the historian are central to advanced studies in the historical discipline, but these skills and methodologies are also highly transferable to the workplace. In this course, students will work in small groups on a research project. Learning will be through directed group discussions and coordinated individual research tasks. The course will introduce students to a wide range of historical sources, equip them with the skills to analyse and interpret those sources, and will also encourage students to develop leadership and team-work roles in solving real historical problems.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1006. Foundations of the modern world: The West in the nineteenth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This introductory course will be offered in the first semester and is normally taken by all students who intend to major in History, but it will also be of interest to other students who wish to include History in their first-year programme. The course aims at encouraging students to acquire a range of skills and knowledge that will both equip them for further studies in History and also provide more general preparation for the workplace and a deeper understanding of the world at large. Emphasis is placed on interaction between students and teachers, and students are encouraged to acquire information technology skills through use of a web-based 'electronic textbook'. The coursework will focus on a range of themes exploring the nineteenth-century Western world, from romanticism and revolution to industrialisation and imperialism.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1008. The world at war (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

By the end of 1941, the entire world was engulfed in war, a war from which the world would emerge in ruins and permanently altered. This course surveys the origins and the course of the Second World War. Here we will examine fascism, national socialism, and German and Japanese expansionism policies. Much attention will focus on the military struggle between 1939 and 1945: tactics, strategy, and major battles. Then we will also examine the occupation policies of the New Order, collaboration and resistance, mass bombings, social change, the concentration camps and the Holocaust in some details. The course will conclude with an analysis of war-time diplomacy, which was the origins of the Cold War.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1009. The twentieth-century world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a first-year course designed to attract non-history majors. It focuses upon providing a broad, non-specialized introduction to the twentieth-century world, and assumes no previous historical training on the part of its clientele. It will be organized around such themes as: the impact of major wars, revolutions, the rise and fall of fascism and communism, the decline of the Western empires, the growth of popular democracy, urbanization, globalization, the changing status of women, and environmental change. Students will be expected either to write a term paper on some theme that interests them or to work as a team on a project related to some aspect of the twentieth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST1010. An introduction to European history and civilisation (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to the development of European civilization from its earliest beginnings in the Fertile Crescent through the classical age of Ancient Greece, and the Roman Empire, to the Middle Ages, the Renaissance, the Reformation, the Enlightenment and the French Revolution. Selected highlights from these topics will be treated in the lectures and seminars and coursework assignments will seek to establish linkages between modern western civilization and its historical foundations. This course is valuable for history students, but should also appeal to others studying literature, art, music or philosophy. It will be especially useful for European Studies Majors. All students are welcome.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1011. Foundations of the modern world: Qing China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will be offered in the second semester and is normally taken by all students who intend to major in History, but it will also be of interest to other students who wish to include History in their first-year programme. Its general aims are identical to the first-semester course **HIST1006. Foundations of the modern world: The West in the nineteenth century**. After an introduction to early and mid Qing history, the course will focus on themes and issues in the history of nineteenth-century China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST1012. From imperial to colonial: nineteenth century Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course starts with looking at Hong Kong under Qing rule. It then goes on to examine the impact of British colonialism on this tiny outlying Chinese territory. Attention will be given to the colonial administration, the social scene, and the economic development of the new British colony until the end of the nineteenth century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second and Third Years**

All candidates for the degree of B.A. or from the Faculty of Social Sciences who have successfully completed the First Year Examination in any department may enrol in the second- or third-year courses offered by the Department.

Second and third year courses in the Department are divided into Survey Courses and Seminar Courses.

Survey Courses are intended to introduce the history of a geographic area in a specific period. These courses will normally involve two lectures per week.

Seminar Courses involve more advanced study of special topics in history and a higher level of training in the use of primary documents or historiography. These courses will normally offer no more than one lecture per week.

In order to satisfy the requirements of a major in History, B.A. students must select courses totalling not less than 48 credit units from among those offered by the Department in the second and third years. Of these, at least 12 credit units must be in Asian history (China, Hong Kong, Japan, or Southeast Asia) and at least 12 credit units must be in Western history (America and Europe). This requirement may be met by either Survey Courses or Seminar Courses. The courses taken must also include at least 12 credit units of Seminar Courses, but students are encouraged to take more than 12 credit units of Seminar Courses.

## **SECOND- AND THIRD-YEAR COURSES IN HISTORY**

**SURVEY COURSES.** Survey courses will normally be offered by the Department in each academic year. Students should consult the Department to find out which surveys are to be offered each year.

### **HIST2001. Qing China, Part I: 1644-1795 – 'A golden age' or 'Autocracy under an alien rule'? (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This period of Chinese history witnessed China being ruled by a minority alien race. There were racial tensions between the rulers and the ruled, and persecution and suppressions were the order of the day. Yet, China during the High Qing enjoyed an unprecedented rise in population and living standard. The course will analyse the history of this period, hoping to arrive at some conclusions in relation to the above two questions.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **HIST2002. Qing China, Part II: 1796-1911 – China under external and internal pressure (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

China by the nineteenth century had lost its lustre of the eighteenth, and yet the Manchu regime continued to survive beyond the first decade of the twentieth century. Why? Which sets of factors caused the decline of the Qing dynasty, external or internal or both? How did the Chinese react to the Western challenge, and why were they not successful in modernizing their country? To answer these questions, an examination of the political, social, economic, institutional and cultural history of the latter part of the Qing dynasty will be necessary.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

### **HIST2003. Twentieth-century China, Part I: from revolution to revolution, 1900-1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the political, social, economic, intellectual and diplomatic history of China from the last decade of Manchu rule to the Communist victory in 1949. Attention will be drawn to the historical forces of continuity and change, and to the themes of nationalism, modernization, militarism, democracy and revolution.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**HIST2004. Twentieth-century China, Part II: from revolution to modernization, 1949 to present (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the consolidation of Communist power, the dynamics and constraints of revolutionary ideology, and the PRC's quest for modernization and great-power status. Attention will be drawn to the Chinese Communists' methods of thought and work, and to the historical forces of continuity and change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2005. History of Hong Kong, Part I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Beginning with the pre-British situation, the course proceeds to examine the establishment of colonial rule, the development of Chinese social institutions such as the Tung Wah Hospital, the emergence of Chinese revolutionaries led by Sun Yat-sen, the anti-colonial boycotts culminating in the general strike of 1925-26, and the events leading up to World War II. Throughout, emphasis is placed on thematic and interpretive concerns.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2006. History of Hong Kong, Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the extraordinary development of Hong Kong after World War II. Hong Kong's relations with China, rapid industrialization in the 1950's and post-industrialization in the 1980's, the interdependence of real estate and financial development, immigration and cultural identity, social problems and riotous disorders, contrasts between modernization and westernization are major thematic concerns. Emphasis will be placed on developing interpretive understanding of historical events.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2008. Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The Meiji leadership centralized Japan after centuries of decentralization. This course attempts to assess the quality of the leadership, identify the problems of centralization, analyze the effectiveness of the solutions, and appraise Japan's achievement at the end of the period especially in terms of its international standing.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2009. Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a general survey of the domestic political, economic, and social history of Japan since 1912. Some of the developments covered will be industrialization, changing systems of international relations (including World War II and the subsequent Allied Occupation), and rapid political change and economic growth in the postwar era.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2011. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part I: 1780-1850 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The modern Spanish philosopher Jorge Santayana once declared: 'Those who do not know the past are forever condemned to repeat its errors'. Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have their origins in the nineteenth century: urbanization and industrial change; rapid and misunderstood social development; the centrality of Germany; nationalism, which threatens to pull apart nations and the multi-national empire of Russia; new alliance patterns that are not so new; revolutionary political change; the development of a true civil society; and the threat from ultra-right-wing populist groups.

In this course we will cover European developments from the origins of the French Revolution through the Revolutions of 1848. Major topics discussed will include the Industrial Revolution, the 'isms' such as liberalism, conservatism, and nationalism, the Revolutions of 1848, and foreign affairs.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2012. Nineteenth-century Europe, Part II: 1850-1914 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many of the characteristics of contemporary Europe have had their origins in the nineteenth century. Today Europe has to deal with several of the problems World War I either failed to resolve or in itself caused.

In this course we will cover European developments from the unifications that transformed Central Europe up to World War I. Major topics will include the second Industrial Revolution, socialism, social and cultural changes, reaction to those changes (anti-semitism and proto-fascism), imperialism, nationalism and liberation movements in Eastern Europe, *fin-de-siècle* Europe, the decline of the multi-national empires, and the origins of World War I.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2013. Twentieth-century Europe, Part I: The European Civil War, 1914-1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This period can be seen as a Thirty Years' War fought over the problem of Germany, beginning with the First World War, 1914-18, and climaxing with the total defeat of Germany at the end of the Second World War, 1939-45. Tensions between the Great Powers were exacerbated by new ideologies such as Fascism, Nazism and Communism, which appeared in Europe as part of a general crisis in Western Civilisation after the First World War. An attempt will be made to evaluate the debate between different schools of historians on what Fascism, Nazism and Communism signified. Finally one of the main aims of the course is to describe, and explain, the mass murders involving the deaths of millions carried out by a new breed of leaders such as Adolf Hitler and Joseph Stalin.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2014. Twentieth-century Europe, Part II: Europe divided and undivided, 1945-1991 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

After the Second World War, Europe was divided into two camps, with Germany itself split into Western and Communist portions. The survey of the Western camp will focus on British, French and West German politics, social change, student revolts, and the growth of the consumer society and mass culture. In studying the 'Other Europe', the course will concentrate on the way Communism evolved and changed in the Soviet Union and its Eastern European empire, concluding with the dramatic popular revolutions that so suddenly toppled the Communist regimes in Eastern Europe in 1989 and the even more momentous collapse of Communism in the former Soviet Union in 1991. As the pace of change in the whole of Europe increased so dramatically in 1989, the course ends with a series of questions. What are the prospects for European unity, economically and politically? What role will the new unified Germany have in Europe? What are the prospects for Russia and the other republics that have emerged from the ruins of the Soviet Empire?

Students studying this course would find **Part I: The European Civil War, 1914-1945** very useful.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2015. The United States before 1900 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is a general survey history of the United States from the colonial era up to 1900. Emphasis will be primarily on the nineteenth century. Key areas of focus include: industrialization and economic growth, urbanization, frontier communities, immigration, slavery, the Civil War, socio-political reform movements, and the Spanish-American War. This course is continued by **The United States in the twentieth century**, though the two courses can be taken separately.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2016. The United States in the twentieth century (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues the survey of United States history begun in **The United States before 1900**, though it can be taken separately. It traces the United States' response to its adjustment from an agrarian, small-scale society to a large-scale, urban, industrialized nation, characterised by large organizations. Concurrently, it covers the development into a global power with interests throughout the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2018. The foreign relations of China, Part II: since 1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course studies the development of China's foreign relations after 1949 with reference to historical influences, ideological premises and practical political, strategic, and economic considerations. Special attention is given to the interaction between theory and practice in China's foreign relations, the evaluation of the impact of China's foreign policy on international politics and vice versa, and the assessment of the major approaches to the study of the topic.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2021. Nineteenth century Russia, 1800-1905 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course surveys developments within the Russian Empire from the duel between Alexander I and Napoleon through the Revolution of 1905, the dress rehearsal for the Revolution of 1917 which destroyed Tsarism. This course focuses on internal developments, rather than on foreign policy; and thus includes topics such as Slavophilism vs. Westernizers, the tsarist reaction, and then reform under Nicholas I and Alexander II, the revolutionary movement from the Decembrists to the Bolsheviks, industrialisation, the Nationalities Question, and the peasantry before and after Emancipation. This course requires no prior knowledge of European history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2022. A special topic in history (6 credits)**

From time to time, the department will offer special survey courses under this title. Students may find details each year in the department's handbook.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2023. The history of the environment of China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

China's environmental problems and ecologically unsustainable patterns of development predate the modern era. This course examines the interaction of human systems with other natural systems that have shaped the course of Chinese history and society.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2024. A century of business in Hong Kong, 1842-1949 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course traces the business history of Hong Kong after it became a British colony until the Communist Takeover of China in 1949. The topics covered in the course include Hong Kong as a centre of opium trade, the development of Western businesses, the mode and practice of Chinese businesses such as the Nam Pak Hong, relations between Western and Chinese businesses, the impact of Chinese nationalism, the world wars, the Great Depression, and communist control in China on Hong Kong business.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2025. British Hong Kong and China 1895-1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course concerns itself with the most uneasy and sometimes turbulent relations between Hong Kong as a British colony, the population of which is almost entirely Chinese, and China which was going through what was perhaps the most dramatic and critical half century of its history. How British Hong Kong responded to such momentous developments as the 1911 Revolution, the rise of Chinese nationalism in the 1920's and Japan's progressive aggression makes a fascinating study.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2026. Interpreting Japanese history through movies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will view films, mainly Japanese and some Western, and study the interpretations of Japanese history and tradition present in the films. In addition to being a historiographic exercise, the course will examine popular attitudes toward the past.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2027. The foundations of international trade and finance in the modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The modern economic world of international trade and finance is the result of developments which took place in Europe from the early Renaissance through to the Industrial Revolution. This course will examine the foundations of these developments focusing particularly on the pre-modern industrial base of Europe, the change in European trading patterns from a Mediterranean to an Atlantic dominance during the Renaissance, the growth of banking and other financial institutions in the early modern period, and the role of urbanisation as a background to the major economic advances which took place during the Industrial Revolution. This course is open to students from all faculties.

Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination.

---

**HIST2029. The West's perception of China (6 credits)**

The West has long had a fascination with China and all things Chinese. From the earliest contacts between China and Europe until the Opium Wars of the mid-19th century most Europeans perceived the Chinese Empire as a sophisticated and advanced civilization which rivalled the kingdoms of Europe for wealth, scientific knowledge, military power and political stability. This course will examine the West's fascination for China from the earliest times through to the early modern period and the height of Europe's taste for 'Chinoiserie'. It will also seek to explain why Europe's attitude towards China changed from the middle of the nineteenth century.

Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination.

---

**HIST2030. From dependencies to dragons: economic history of twentieth-century Southeast Asia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In 1900, most of Southeast Asia lay under colonial rule, with its economy predominantly based on agriculture and the export of primary products to the West. A century later, the region included some of the fastest-growing economies in the world (like Singapore), as many countries moved through import-substitution industrialisation (ISI) to export-oriented industrialisation (EOI) and beyond. Along the way Southeast Asia experienced the Great Depression, the Japanese occupation, and, with the coming of independence, a choice between capitalism and socialism. In this course we examine this century of change -- and attempt to analyse the lessons that might be drawn from it.

Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination.

**HIST2031. History through film (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course looks at the manner in which film has portrayed events in history, considering the degree to which film can enhance or be detrimental to our understanding of history.

Students may expect to gain some appreciation, not just of the films themselves, but of the degree to which any movie is the product of a certain historical period and reflect its values and preoccupations. This course should be particularly enlightening to students who taking other United States history courses and American Studies majors.

Students are expected to produce one term paper, a comparative study of at least two films, to participate in class discussions, and to make at least one presentation in class.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2034. An Introduction to the history of education in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will provide students with the opportunity to relate educational developments in Hong Kong to contemporary opinion and other socio-economic pressures. It has been designed to introduce students to the perspectives, methods, and resources of history as they can be applied to educational matters and not merely to present a set of non-dispute-worthy "facts" about past Hong Kong schools. As such, it is essentially a form of social history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2035. The Bauhinia and the Lotus: Culture and history of the two SARs (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Prior to the Opium War, Macao was the major theatre for the first encounter between China and the West. After Hong Kong had been ceded to Great Britain by The Nanjing Treaty, Hong Kong soon replaced Macao as the centre for Sino-Western cultural and technical interchange.

Even though before 1997 and 1999 both Hong Kong and Macao were under the administration of Western countries, both have remained a predominantly Chinese society with their own unique heritage and history.

The aim of this course is to introduce to the student the development of Hong Kong and Macao's history and cultural heritage. It emphasizes the role and function of Hong Kong and Macao history in modern and contemporary Chinese history and its cultural interactions with the West.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2037. Germany between the two World Wars: The rise and fall of Adolf Hitler (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The inter-war years between 1918 and 1945 were a time of traumatic upheaval in the history of modern Germany. After World War I freedom and democracy in the Weimar Republic were threatened by nationalism, fascism, socialism and communism. These pressures were intensified by economic tensions and high unemployment rates. The miserable conditions contributed to the rise of the Nazis and Adolf Hitler, an extreme nationalist who wanted a reawakened, racially united Germany to expand eastward at the expense of the Slavs. After finally seizing power in 1933, Hitler installed a totalitarian

state wiping out all democratic institutions. The Nazi persecution of the Jews and occupation, exploitation and domination of much of continental Europe in World War II became one of the blackest chapters in the history of Europe. With the fall of Berlin and the suicide of Hitler in 1945, the German people were able to gain freedom and democracy again. In our course we will not concentrate on Hitler alone but study the outcome of World War I and the revolutions of 1918-19 on the mentality of the German people, consider the problems of the fledgling Weimar Republic, and discuss the era of fascism in Germany and Italy, the nazification of culture and society, the Holocaust, and German aggression against Europe in World War II.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2038. Germany, 1871-1990: From unification to reunification (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Germany, the largest country in Western Europe, needed a long time to build up a sovereign national state and to develop a common national identity. After the unification was achieved in 1871, internal and external political struggles led the country in two devastating wars in 1914 and 1939. Following the Second World War two independent German republics, controlled by their respective superpowers USA and USSR, developed into a capitalist and communist society. Reunification was finally achieved in 1989/90 by the collapse of the Soviet power in Central Europe. The course surveys the most important developments within the German Imperial Empire, the Weimar Republic, Nazi Germany, and the Federal Republic and German Democratic Republic. We will study topics such as conservatism, liberalism, nationalism, imperialism, and socialism, the two World Wars, and concentrate on the developments and changes of the different political and economic systems in modern German history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2039. War and peace: Conflicts and conflict resolutions since 1945 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

War is an extension of politics. True or false? The objective of the course is to understand a) the nature of military conflicts, war and warfare and b) the ways and means of maintaining and keeping peace without resorting to war. In-depth case studies of major conflicts and conflict resolutions will be provided.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

### **HIST2040. Life in Tokugawa Japan, 1603-1868 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Tokugawa society was colourful, interesting, multidimensional and full of energy. The period witnessed great urban expansion and advancement in rural technology. Students will enjoy looking at the ways of life of Tokugawa lords and merchants living in the great cities and castle towns, and that of the peasants in the countryside. The rich cultural life of the period also makes fascinating study.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2041. Twentieth century Russia (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A major purpose of this course is to make the current, revolutionary developments in that huge superpower more comprehensible through an understanding of its recent history. This course surveys Russia throughout this past century; the origins of the 1917 Revolution, a revolution which transformed not only Russia, but also the whole world; then the development of the Soviet Union from Lenin through Stalin up through Brezhnev; and finally, the momentous developments of the past 10 years which caused the collapse of the Soviet Union.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2042. The history of sport (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will focus on the development of modern sport in Europe (with a strong British focus), and develop historical themes of class, gender, age, 'race' and locality. Particular emphasis will be given to the history of sport in relation to themes such as nationalism, empire and public health, in addition to the role of the state, the media and business in shaping and controlling the nature of contemporary sport. In brief, the course examines how and why sport has been located at the interstices of gender, race and class and has produced, and been generated by, multiple and contested social identities.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2043. The city in modern China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will survey the process by which China's cities were physically rebuilt, politically redefined and culturally transformed in the twentieth century. From Guangzhou in the south, to Changchun in the north, we will examine the role of cities as agents of change and how they contributed to the nation building process in modern Chinese history.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2044. The city in traditional China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

China has the longest continuous history of urban experience in the world. This course will explore the role of the city in traditional Chinese civilization from the first appearance of urban places until the Qing dynasty. We will examine not only the form and functioning of imperial capitals but also the smaller towns and villages where the majority of the population lived. We will seek to understand why China's cities developed differently than the west and represented a distinct cultural type of urban existence in the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**HIST2046. The modern European city: Urban living and open spaces (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes).*

Over the past century and a half, the majority of Europeans have become urban dwellers. On an individual, civic, national and international level, every aspect of social life has been influenced by this evolution. Consequently, the study of cities provides a powerful perspective upon European history. An essential part of the process of urbanisation involved the allocation of urban open spaces to specific social and cultural functions. A key focus for public and private life, the city's open spaces – parks, gardens, streets and squares – had a fundamental influence upon the nature of urban living. As those in positions of power influenced the provision and purpose of these areas important developments in European social, economic, cultural and political life were linked closely to the evolution of open spaces in cities.

In this course the changing use and allocation of urban open spaces and the evolution of meanings of public and private space will provide a lens through which the development of modern European cities will be analysed. The importance of open spaces will be addressed with recourse to a number of key themes, including the 'greening' of cities of the nineteenth century, the construction of ideal Fascist and Socialist cities in the 1930s, functionalism and post-war reconstruction, and the 'sustainable city' of the 1990s. By the end of the course the students will not only be more familiar with historical approaches to urban 'space' but will also have received an introduction to the evolution of European cities and the changing cultural importance of public and private open spaces.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**SEMINAR COURSES** Except for the Theory and practice of history and the Dissertation elective, the seminar courses listed may not be offered every year. Students should consult the Department to find out which Seminars are to be offered each year.

**HIST2032. Case studies in women's history: Hong Kong and the U.S. (6 credits)**  
**(Cross-Listing in Department of History and Programme in American Studies)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This seminar course will explore themes and issues in women's history/gender history in the 19th and 20th century. By focusing on Hong Kong and the U.S., students will work within a comparative framework to explore difference and common ground between societies and selected historical periods. Topics include: varieties of women's reform movements, gender and World War II, and gender and economic transformation in the late 20th century.

(Note: BAII students wishing to take this course may do so with the permission of the Department of History or Programme in American Studies.)

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2045. Shanghai Grand: History, culture and society in urban China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In the first half of the twentieth century what did it mean to be both modern and Chinese? To Chinese and foreigners alike, Shanghai represented the most progressive city in China. The transformation of Shanghai into a world city will be the focus of this course. In the process, Shanghai became the site for and the sight of contending ideas of modernity for a revolutionary generation of Chinese determined to build a new identity and a new nation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2047. A special seminar in history (6 credits)**

From time to time, the Department will offer special courses under this title. Students may find details each year in the departmental handbook.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2048. The history of young people in modern Europe (6 credits)**

Responses to and representations of young people provide a valuable insight into the values of the society and the culture which generated them. The aim of this course will be to compare changing experiences of growing up with evolving representations of the life-stages used to identify the young (childhood, adolescence and youth) in nineteenth- and twentieth century Europe. It therefore considers what it has meant to be young in different times and places. Through comparison of experiences and representations the course will reconsider the validity of terms used to describe the young, highlight the social, political and cultural motives for advancing different roles and representations young people and generate a broad insight into regional patterns of similarity and difference in the European history of this demographic group. This course aims to teach students the importance of the historical context in shaping young people's lives by addressing variables such as class, gender and race. It will also introduce students to a variety of different methodological and theoretical approaches to the topic.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2049. Technology and social change: a history of everyday life (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Ever wonder about the origins of everyday objects and the human side to dramatic technological developments? This course will explore the history of science, technology, discovery and how everyday life has been transformed. Students will have the opportunity to be history detectives and track down the origins and social impact of the things that make the modern world work.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2050. British sources relating to China, 1895-1949 (6 credits)**

For the greater part of the period China was subject to a form of encroachment so extensive and pervasive that it has been commonly referred to as 'semi-colonialism'. Until World War I Britain was unquestionably the foremost colonial power in China. Despite its increasing preoccupation with the European situation after the war, Britain retained considerable residual influence in China. As a result of Britain's long and intricate involvement, a great wealth of British sources has been accumulated on China. These sources emanate from different quarters and, individually and collectively, they shed immense light not only on Sino-British relations but on China's internal situation.

About one half of the course is made up of formal lectures outlining the major events, trends, developments in the crucial half century prior to the communist takeover in 1949: the revolutionary and constitutional movements, 1895-1911; the 1911 Revolution; the Second Revolution, 1913; the Monarchical Movement, 1915-1916; the nationalist movement of the 1920s; Japan's invasion in the 1920s and 1930s; the Sino-Japanese War, 1937-1945; and the Chinese Civil War, 1946-1949.

The other half of the course comprises discussions and readings on the topics dealt with in the formal lectures. The British materials used for discussion and reading are mostly from the following sources: Foreign Office China files, Foreign Office Japan files, Foreign Office Embassy and Consular files, missionary papers, Customs papers, company papers, and major English newspapers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2051. British sources relating to Hong Kong, 1895-1949 (6 credits)**

The period 1895-1949 is remarkable in the history of Hong Kong not only because of the many important events in Sino-British relations with regard to the British colony, but also because of the many significant changes within the territory itself.

About one half of the course is made up of formal lectures which broadly fall into two parts. The first part deals with the major crises affecting Hong Kong which called for Sino-British negotiations and other forms of interaction: the 1911 Revolution, the Seamen's Strike in 1922, the Guangzhou-Hong Kong Strike-Boycott in 1925-1926, Japan's invasion of China from 1937, and the Chinese Civil War, 1946-1949. The second part of the lecture series deals with some important aspects and concerns in Hong Kong society: the emergence of local Chinese leadership, the communist threat, and other social developments.

The other half of the course is made up of seminars, tutorials, and other media of discussion which emphasize the usage of British primary sources for a deeper understanding of the events and issues dealt with in the lectures. Major sources used in the course include government documents, missionary papers, company papers, private papers of British officials, and English newspapers.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2052. Social issues in Hong Kong history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Based on the reading and analysis of documentary sources, this course will explore social problems such as the survival of Chinese customs, poverty, social mobility, housing, immigration and emigration, and professionalization during Hong Kong's colonial period.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2053. The Cold War (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses upon the emergence and development of the Cold War in the 1940s and 1950s. It takes into account the new scholarship based on evidence from former Soviet, Eastern European, and Chinese archives since the early 1990s. Students are expected to make extensive use of documentary sources.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2054. The United States and Asia, 1945-1975 (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is intended to teach students how to understand such historical developments as American relations with Republican and Communist China, the Korean War and the Vietnam War, through the reading and analysis of documentary sources: public statements, confidential reports, memoirs, journalistic accounts, etc.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST2055. The Chinese rural economy, with special reference to Guangdong province, 1870s to 1930s (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at introducing to students a significant body of Western literature on the controversial subject of the late Qing and Republican rural economy. It uses the case of Guangdong to illustrate the merits as well as limitations of different schools of thought regarding the Chinese rural economy in the modern period. Special attention is drawn to the man-land ratio, the production of the staple food crop, trade, the commercialization of agriculture, land tax, rent and rural credit. Although distinctive in significant ways, Guangdong's rural economic development displayed a pattern that was congenial with the trend of development throughout China.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2056. Gender and history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What has it meant to be 'male' or 'female' in different times and places? How can asking such questions affect our understanding of history? In this course we will study the cultural construction of masculinity and femininity, both Western and Asian, through reading and discussing works by some of the major scholars in this field.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST2057. Social history of contemporary Japan (6 credits)**

This course will study changes in society in contemporary, post-World War II Japan. In particular, it will look at the transition from an agricultural economy to an industrial economy and the social impact of that transition; at the experience of minority groups; and at the experience of women.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST3015. The theory and practice of history (6 credits)**

*(This course is open to third year students only.)*

This course aims to acquaint students with some of the theoretical and practical considerations which underlie the study and writing of history by considering the development of the discipline of history from its beginnings in the ancient world through to the postmodernist critique. The course is especially recommended to those who wish to pursue history at the postgraduate level. All students taking the **Dissertation elective** are required to take **The theory and practice of history**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**HIST3016. Computer methods for historical studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is open to third year students only.)*

Computers and information technology are playing an increasingly important role in historical research and teaching. The theoretical and practical implications of these developments are considered in this course. Students will learn to use a range of relevant information technologies such as databases and web-authoring tools, but they will also be expected to assess critically their uses by historians. Teaching will be primarily through workshop sessions. This course offers a range of skill-learning opportunities for students who intend to pursue historical studies at the postgraduate level. It will also be particularly valuable to students who wish to teach History in the schools where information technology will become more common under new government initiatives.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**HIST3017. Dissertation elective (12 credits)**

*(This course is open to third year students only.)*

This is a research course which requires submission of an extended written dissertation. All students taking the **Dissertation elective** are required to take **The theory and practice of history**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second- and Third-year Coursework Assessment**

Coursework assessment will be based on an assessment of a candidate's tutorial and seminar papers and on performance in class discussions and in other practical work involved in the course.

---

**Second- and Third-year Examinations**

Courses which require examinations will be examined at the end of the semester in which they are taken. One ninety-minute examination will be set for each 6-credit course and a three-hour examination for each 12-credit course. No examination will be set on the **Dissertation elective**, as the dissertation itself will be examined, but candidates taking this elective may be required to attend an oral examination.

---

**Hong Kong History Workshop**

This facility is intended primarily for students interested in the history of Hong Kong and the surrounding region. Its function is to help students to obtain material relevant to their courses and to demonstrate research techniques appropriate to their work.

---

**JAPANESE STUDIES****First Year**

If you plan to major in Japanese Studies or to achieve a double major with Japanese as one of your subjects, you must take a minimum of 24 credits (**Japanese language I** and **Introduction to Japanese studies**) in Japanese in the first year. Two optional courses (**Introduction to Japanese linguistics** and **Japanese language enhancement**) are offered to students who wish to study the language more.

**Compulsory Courses****JAPN1008. Japanese language I (18 credits)**

This course comprises all important areas of second language training catering for students with no prior knowledge of the Japanese Language. Students are introduced to the grammatical component through a carefully graded syllabus integrated with intensive practice in speaking, listening, reading and writing. While focus is on a thorough understanding of basic Japanese grammar, we also aim to develop communicative competence in a diversity of situations. The course will prepare the students adequately for more elaborate reading in the range of language intensive courses in the second year.

Assessment: 100% coursework (including tests, quizzes, and assignments).

**N.B.** For pedagogical reasons, some of the classes in this course will be taught in Cantonese. Non-Cantonese speakers should ensure that they are in a class taught through the medium of English. Students who have no prior knowledge of Chinese characters should seek the advice of their teacher at the beginning of the semester, since characters will not be specifically taught but will be an integrated part of the course.

---

**JAPN1011. Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Introduction to Japanese Studies aims to provide a broad-based description of Japanese society and culture. The course will cover altogether seven different aspects of Japan – language and communication, history, geography, politics and government, religion and thought, economy and literature. Students will be assigned to a tutorial group either in the first or second semester.

This course is available primarily for those Arts Faculty students who enrol in Japanese Language, but the students from the Faculties of Social Sciences and Business and Economics may also take the course subject to available places.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken.

---

**Optional Courses**

**JAPN1009. Introduction to Japanese linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course is an introductory linguistics course with particular reference to the Japanese language. The language will be viewed from both diachronic and synchronic perspectives and frequent cross linguistic comparisons are made with Cantonese, Mandarin and English. The purpose is to stimulate interest in this particular language and facilitate the acquisitional process while promoting general understanding of human language behaviour, which is deemed important to the interested second language learner.

Assessment: 100% coursework (reading assignment summaries, test, presentation, midterm paper and term project).

---

**JAPN1010. Japanese language enhancement (6 credits)**

This is a demanding course which aims to reinforce the grammar lessons of the **JAPN1008** language course. It is designed especially for students who have difficulties catching up with the language lessons or who would like to do more oral exercises. Special attention will therefore be paid to enhancing oral skills through various teaching methods. Through effective exercises conducted regularly, students are expected to gain confidence in using the Japanese they have learnt.

Assessment: 100% coursework (class performance: role-play, oral exercises; written and listening quizzes; written/oral/listening assignments; written and listening tests).

The above course will be offered in second semester only.

---

**JAPN1012. Cults, comics and companies: a look at Japan today (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course looks into various areas of contemporary Japanese society in order to give students insight into the dynamics of today's Japan. Topics including Japanese popular culture, company culture and organization, technology, the role of women, families and the aging society, education, and religion.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations and short essays).

## Second and Third Years

The **Japanese Studies Programme** includes courses in the language, society and culture of Japan. These are divided into *language* courses, *language intensive* courses, and *interdisciplinary content* courses and/or tutorials, each of which has different aims requiring different sets of linguistic and analytical skills.

*Language* courses form the backbone of the programme in Japanese Studies, since students taking up Japanese are expected to have no prior knowledge of the language. These courses are designed to provide a balanced training in reading, writing, speaking and listening to Japanese and to take students from elementary to advanced levels of competence in each of these skills.

*Language intensive* courses are used to back up the core language courses and are designed to broaden students' knowledge of Japanese through a wide range of reading materials in novels, short stories, journalism, essays, comic books and so on. The primary aim of these courses, however, is to make use of such materials to analyse and discuss various aspects of contemporary Japanese society and culture.

*Interdisciplinary content* courses are taught by means of lectures and tutorials by members of the Department of Japanese Studies and by members of other departments (such as Fine Arts, History, Geography, Music and Sociology) who specialize in aspects of Japanese Studies. The aim of these courses is to provide students with a deeper understanding of various aspects of traditional and contemporary Japanese society and culture.

### *Prerequisites*

*Language Courses:* There is no departmental prerequisite for admission to **Japanese language I**. Students may not *normally* enroll for **Japanese language II** or **Japanese language III** without having satisfactorily completed the previous level. However, students with prior qualifications in the Japanese language may apply to sit for a qualifying examination without having followed the course. **[Same conditions also apply to Japanese language I(a), Japanese language II(a), and Japanese language III(a)].** For such students, a C-grade is the minimum requirement for acceptance into the major programme in Japanese Studies. Students who obtain an overall D-grade or lower in the first year *language* course may be required to take a further examination and/or interview before being permitted to enter the major programme in Japanese Studies.

*Language Intensive Courses:* All *language intensive* courses require knowledge of the Japanese language and are open to students of **Japanese language II** and **Japanese language III**. Other students who have attained a comparable level of proficiency in Japanese may also apply for admission to these courses.

*Interdisciplinary Content Courses:* *Interdisciplinary content* courses do not normally require a knowledge of Japanese (although it may prove helpful in some cases), and are open to all students in the Faculty of Arts and Social Sciences. Some courses are open to students from all faculties.

Choice of courses and options is subject to the approval of the Department. Students may take options entirely within the Department or options which include courses offered by other departments in the Faculties of Arts and Social Sciences. In all cases students must ensure that their choice of courses conforms to any prerequisites laid down by the department concerned.

Teaching is given in lectures, tutorials, classes, skill groups, and practical work, for which the computer room, the language laboratory and audio-visual library (including Japanese satellite TV) are designed. Proficiency in written and spoken English, as well as Japanese, is taken into account in assessing coursework and in grading examination answers.

Regular attendance is expected at tutorials and other classes, as well as the punctual completion of all work prescribed by a student's teacher, tutor or supervisor.

Prescribed reading and other specifications for each course, recommended course combinations, and information about prerequisites are also available in the Department Handbook. Course outlines are also available from the departmental office and will also be handed out to students during the first week of the semester.

### Combination of Courses

Students' selection of courses in Japanese should form a coherent programme of work and is subject to approval by the Head of Department, or a curricular adviser nominated by the Department.

If Japanese is taken as a double major subject, students should select a good balance of courses in alignment with the **Japanese Studies Programme**. Students should refer to the **Japanese Studies Programme** entry for further details of course combinations in its curriculum.

### Japanese Studies Programme

1. The **Japanese Studies Programme** consists of 3 components:
  - (i) *Japanese language* training in the Department of Japanese Studies;
  - (ii) *Japanese language intensive* courses in various disciplines taught in the Department of Japanese Studies;
  - (iii) Japan-related *interdisciplinary content* courses in various disciplines which are open to any student who satisfies the prerequisites.
2. A major in Japanese Studies consists of 60 credits in the **Japanese Studies programme** to be taken in the Second and Third years.

Students undertaking the major must have taken the first year courses **Japanese language I (18 credits)** and **Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)**.

To major in Japanese Studies, students must take **Japanese language II (12 credits)** and **Japanese language III (12 credits)** (as in List A below) in their second and third years, and, in addition, must complete at least one *Japanese Language Intensive Course* (6 credits) (to be selected from list B) and two *Interdisciplinary Content Courses* (6 credits each) (to be selected from List C) in each of their second and third years.

The remaining credits which students majoring in Japanese Studies need to complete in their second and third years to satisfy the requirements of Regulation A10 may or may not be related to the fields of the *interdisciplinary content* courses of their choices in Japanese Studies. A student who does not intend to take Japanese Studies courses will still be able to take the 2 *Japanese Language* courses but will not be considered to be in the **Japanese Studies programme**.



Students who wish to achieve a double major in Japanese Studies and in a major offered by another core Department in the Faculty of Arts must have taken **Japanese language I (18 credits)** and **Introduction to Japanese studies (6 credits)** in their first year; **Japanese language II (12 credits)** and **Japanese language III (12 credits)** (as in List A below) in their second and third years, and, in addition, must complete at least one *Japanese Language Intensive* Course (6 credits) (to be selected from List B) and one *Interdisciplinary Content* Course (6 credits) (to be selected from List C) in each of their second and third years, and must also meet the requirements of the other departmental major.

---

## Second Year

### JAPN2001. Japanese language II (12 credits)

This *language* course is a continuation of **Japanese language I**. Its aim is to provide a balanced emphasis on the various linguistic skills of reading, writing, speaking, comprehension, translation and composition, and to bring students to an intermediate level of Japanese proficiency.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language I**.

---

### JAPN2002. Japan in Japanese (6 credits)

This tutorial-based *language intensive* course deals with various aspects of traditional and contemporary Japanese society and culture, making use of written texts in a variety of styles, including newspapers and magazines.

Assessment: 100% coursework (weekly assignments, vocabulary quizzes, comprehension tests, project work (short report and presentation)).

Prerequisite: **Japanese language I**.

---

### JAPN2007. Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)

This is a tutorial-based *language intensive* course for second year students. It aims to introduce students to the richness of Japanese literature, through careful study of a number of modern short stories. Students will be required to read original Japanese texts written by representative writers. Themes and ideas in the stories will be thoroughly discussed. Literary styles and techniques of different writers will be analysed and contrasted in order to enhance students' analytical power and critical thinking. Another aim of the course is to improve students' reading and speaking skills through literary appreciation and discussion. Grammatical explanation will be given in class in order to facilitate understanding.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language I**.

**JAPN2008. Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *language intensive* course aims to provide students with skills in translating Japanese texts into English. Students will have the opportunity to learn how to analyse Japanese sentences in detail and translate them accurately into idiomatic English. We start with simple texts which are chosen to demonstrate a variety of sentence structures, and gradually we progress to more complicated texts, dealing with topics studied in some of the *content* courses. Various types of special vocabulary and style will be introduced as the course progresses. Students will be expected to prepare for class by working on the texts before coming to class. There will be a number of written assignments in which the students will have to analyse sentence structures and prepare written translations of short texts.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language I or Japanese language II(a).**

Corequisite: **Japanese language II or Japanese language III(a).**

---

**JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

This *language intensive* course aims to provide students with basic skills in translating Japanese texts into Chinese and vice versa. Students will translate short, simple texts, chosen to illustrate various sentence patterns in Chinese and Japanese. Texts with more complex structures with a variety of vocabulary and style will gradually be introduced to build up students' skills. Students will be familiarised with a number of reference tools useful in Chinese/Japanese translation and will use them in their work.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Corequisite: **Japanese language II.**

---

**Third Year****JAPN2020. Japanese language II(a) (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This intermediate level *Japanese language* course is open to students who have successfully completed **Japanese language I(a)**. The course provides further training in reading, writing, speaking and listening Japanese and is designed to help students develop their linguistic and communicative skills in the language.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language I(a).**

---

**JAPN3001. Japanese language III (12 credits)**

This *language* course is a continuation of **Japanese language II**, and again offers a balanced range of language skills, but with an additional emphasis on the applications of linguistic principles and methodology, and on reading skills both general and specialized. The characteristic language patterns and terminology adopted in specific fields (e.g. literature, history, geography, etc. according to academic specialization) are explored on a tutorial basis.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II.**

**JAPN3003. Selected readings in Japanese studies (6 credits)**

This tutorial-based *language intensive* course provides an opportunity to read and discuss prescribed Japanese texts in a specific field of Japanese Studies, and is open to third year students who have successfully completed **Japanese language II** and at least one language intensive course. The texts are selected with a view to improving the level of Japanese language proficiency of the third year students. It is open only to students majoring in Japanese Studies.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II**.

---

**JAPN3004. Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course looks at selected works of fiction written by postwar Japanese writers. Students will be expected to read, understand and analyse representative works of the writers in their original Japanese. Themes, literary techniques and styles of the various fictional works used in the course will be critically discussed in order to help students understand and enjoy Japanese literature in greater depth.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment(s)).

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II** (this course is open only for Japanese major students whose Japanese language level (second year examination result) is C-grade or above).

---

**JAPN3005. Media Japanese (6 credits)**

This *language intensive* course, taught in small groups, is open to third year students who have successfully completed **Japanese language II**. It is designed to further enhance students' knowledge of the Japanese language and the society in which it is used by means of written as well as audio and visual media. Students will be required to read, watch, listen to, and discuss the contents of newspaper and magazine articles, and television and radio programmes. They will be expected to keep abreast of daily news about Japan as covered in the Chinese and English language media.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II**.

---

**JAPN3006. Extended essay in Japanese studies (6 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course may be taken only by third year students who have taken at least 60 credits as part of their BA in Japanese Studies, and who wish to specialize in a particular topic. This topic is to be selected, approved, and discussed under the tutorial guidance of a supervisor, before being written up in either English or Japanese as an extended research essay. The minimum length required is 8,000 words in English, or 10,000 Japanese characters.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JAPN3007. Translation II (Japanese into English) (6 credits)**

This *language intensive* course aims to develop further the students' skills in translating Japanese texts into English. In this course students will be expected to translate more complicated texts within a variety of genres. Further types of special vocabulary and style will be introduced. Problems involved in how to deal with idiomatic phrases will be discussed and solutions suggested. The course will be useful for students who wish to have a future career as translators or who expect to be employed in firms dealing with Japan. The students will be expected to prepare for class by working on the texts before coming to class. There will be a number of written assignments in which the students will have to prepare written translations of longer texts.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Translation I (Japanese into English)**.

**JAPN3008. Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course looks at the contemporary Japanese popular music scene since World War Two. The main approach used will be anthropological rather than musicological or ethno musicological. The course will take a close look at how the Japanese popular music industry was established and developed. It will also examine how the images of particular popular singers and songs were constructed by the music industry, and then revised to take account of the response of audiences. We will also explore the social and historical situation in which the popularity of a particular singer and song reflects.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, assignments, presentation and tests).

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II.**

---

**JAPN3009. Japanese film (6 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course, taught in small groups, introduces modern/contemporary Japanese filmmakers (e.g. Ozu Yasujiro, Mizoguchi Kenji, Kurosawa Akira, Iwai Shunji, Suo Masayuki, Sento Naomi, Hashiguchi Ryosuke) and their works. Students will read articles about them in newspapers, magazines, websites, etc., synopses and part of scenarios of their major films, all in Japanese, watch the films in Japanese (with English and/or Chinese subtitle) and discuss them. The course aims to enhance the students' skills of reading/listening/watching Japanese films and their scenarios, to provide them with the basic knowledge about Japanese films and their makers and to offer opportunities to discuss on Japanese films in Japanese. This course is open only for the third year students of Japanese Studies.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentation(s) and essay assignment(s)).

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II** (this course is open only for Japanese major students whose Japanese language level (second year examination result) is C-grade or above).

---

**JAPN3010. Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

This *language intensive* course is a continuation of **Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese)**. It aims to further develop students' skills in translating more complex passages written in Japanese and Chinese. Passages will be chosen from established sources in Chinese and Japanese covering various topics and subjects.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Corequisite: **Japanese language III.**

---

**JAPN3011. Japanese in popular culture (6 credits)**

Apart from language used in newspapers, TV news, shopping, business letters, etc., people often use language for entertainment purpose in popular culture. This *language intensive* course introduces a variety of Japanese found in fairy tales, children's songs, TV programmes, magazines, *manga*, *anime*, popular songs, *rakugo*, *manzai*, poems and others. The course aims to provide the students with an opportunity to expose themselves to the various forms of Japanese and to enhance their Japanese language ability. This is a tutorial-based *language intensive* course, taught in small groups, 1 hour/week.

Assessment: 100% coursework (short quizzes, presentations and essay assignments).

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II** (this course is open only for Japanese major students).

**JAPN3012. Japanese language III(a) (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This *language* course is open to students who have successfully completed **JAPN2020**. The course provides further training on a balanced range of language skills. In addition, the course is designed to enhance students' understanding of Japanese society and culture so that they can use the obtained skills appropriately.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

Prerequisite: **Japanese language II(a)**.

---

**JAPN3013. Business Japanese (6 credits)**

This *language intensive* course teaches students to be able to read and write some of the most important kinds of business documents, especially letters. There will be two classes each week. One class concentrates on reading and understanding business letters and being able to summarize their main points in English. In the other class, students learn about the structure of business letters and the vocabulary and expressions needed to compose them. Coursework assignments include composing business letters based on what has been learned in the class. Some business telephone conversation may also be taught if time allows.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

---

**JAPN3014. Project in Japanese business (6 credits)**

The Project in Japanese Business *interdisciplinary content* course is designed to integrate the student's knowledge of Japanese language, society and culture, and to apply it to a piece of work for a Japanese business organization. Through a short-term internship, the student will gain real life experience dealing with Japanese managers while polishing his or her communication and interpersonal skills. In a subsequent essay, the student will report and analyze the problems that he or she has encountered using theoretical frameworks.

Assessment: 100% coursework (Proposal, Project, and Essay).

Prerequisite: Japanese Language II and at least one *language intensive* course and two *interdisciplinary content* courses.

---

**Second and Third Years****JAPN1007. Japanese language I(a) (6 credits)**

(This course is also offered to first and second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)

This *Japanese language* course is open to students with no previous knowledge of the language. The course provides a balanced training in reading, writing, speaking and listening and is intended to help students build linguistic and communicative skills in Japanese.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

**JAPN2003. Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)**

This general survey *interdisciplinary content* course deals with Japanese novels, poems, and plays. The aim of this course is to provide students with a basic knowledge of the historical development of Japanese literature. The course covers Japanese myth, *monogatari*, *waka*, *renga*, *haiku*, *noh*, *kabuki*, *yoruri*, and literary works by selected modern writers.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester.

Prerequisite: Basic Japanese language knowledge is an advantage.

---

**JAPN2010. Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by lectures and tutorials - focuses on various aspects of Japanese business. It is particularly concerned with the social organization and culture of the Japanese salaryman, and deals with such varied topics as company socialization, decision-making, management procedures, gender relations, leisure activities, sake drinking, and so on. The course is open to both second- and third-year students of Japanese Studies, as well as to students from other departments and faculties who may have an academic interest in its contents.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

---

**JAPN2011. Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by lectures and tutorials - is designed to provide undergraduate students specializing in Japanese Studies with a comprehensive introduction to, and understanding of, certain aspects of contemporary Japanese society. As such it will focus on such themes as comics, tourism, sexuality, and TV dramas.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester.

---

**JAPN2012. Education in Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course is taught in lectures and tutorials, and examines education in Japan from several angles. It will start with an introduction to the history and development of educational policies and practices in Japan from the Tokugawa through to the postwar period. We will then examine the contemporary educational system, looking at its distinctive characteristics, and asking what it aims to achieve and how effective it is. We will consider not only the structure of the educational system, but also the content of education, including school practices. We will then look at present-day discussions about education in Japan, its successes and failures, and the direction it should take in the future. We will also examine teaching and learning outside the public education system, in settings such as workplaces, sports clubs, and music lessons, and ask if there are distinctive approaches to teaching and learning that have been developed in Japan.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester.

**JAPN2013. Women in Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by lectures and tutorials - focuses on the issue of gender in Japan. It will start with a brief overview of women's position in Japan in various historical periods to provide a background for dealing with women's roles and positions in contemporary Japanese society. The course will focus on how girls are socialized and educated, on women's role in the family, the work place, and in public life. Throughout the course the complementary roles of men and women will be examined, so that a picture of the roles and positions of men in Japan will also emerge.

Assessment: 100% coursework (a research project, presentations, participation in group discussions).

---

**JAPN2014. China and Japan (6 credits)**

This *interdisciplinary content* course will examine the history of Chinese-Japanese relations in the context of East Asian world order up to the early twentieth century. Attention will be paid to the fact that the transfer of Chinese culture from China to Japan throughout history has been as much a political process as a cultural one both for China and Japan. The reverse flow of 'acquired' Western culture from Meiji Japan to China in the early twentieth century will also be examined in some detail in order to provide a comparative perspective on the modernization of the two countries. Students must be able to read Chinese. A knowledge of Japanese will be helpful.

Assessment: 100% coursework (presentations and essays).

---

**JAPN2015. Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course - taught by lectures and tutorials - concentrates on the study of Japanese enterprise groupings. It will start with three major theoretical perspectives on economic organizations - structural, strategic, and institutional - to enable students to theoretically understand Japanese enterprise groupings. The histories of different enterprise groupings, their operation, and the function these groupings serve will then be examined. As such it will focus on such topics as the special roles of main banks, general trading firms, insurance companies, core member corporations of the groupings, and the so-called preferential trading between core large corporations and their peripheral companies. Finally, the discussion of these topics will be placed in the context of Japanese and American trade conflicts so that students can have a general understanding of the conflicts.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

---

**JAPN2016. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I  
Comparative phonology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course will detail the phonological components of Japanese and Cantonese through extensive reading of current theories and a contrastive analysis. Besides construing both common and specific traits of the sound system of human languages, the course will help students familiarize themselves with the most common sets of transcription used in language studies which include the most important one, the International Phonetic Alphabets (IPA).

Assessment: 100% coursework (a series of transcription tests and a final project on comparative studies).

Prerequisite: **Japanese language I, Japanese language I(a) or Certificate Japanese Courses.**

**JAPN2027. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II**  
**Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Potential areas of native language interference in the acquisition of the pronunciation system in a foreign language are illustrated by native speakers of Cantonese and Japanese. Theoretical discussions and knowledge in **Comparative Linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I** are used as a basis for training students to predict areas of interference in this *interdisciplinary content* course. Languages such as English, Mandarin, French and Korean will be cited for relevant reference.

Assessment: 100% coursework (tutorial tasks, test, and a final project on pedagogy).

Prerequisite: **Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I**  
**Comparative phonology.**

---

**JAPN2024. Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III**  
**Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course firstly focuses on theoretical discussion of grammatical peculiarities of the two languages in question, from the perspective as two rather distinctively typed natural languages of the world. Next, they are examined and contrasted in relation to potential problem areas when they are respectively considered as the source language as well as the target language in the course of acquisition, i.e. for Cantonese native speakers learning Japanese, and vice versa.

Assessment: 100% coursework (assessment portfolio including lecture and reading summaries, tests presentation and term paper).

---

**JAPN2018. Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course looks at various aspects of art and popular culture in Japan. It will mainly focus on contemporary Japan, looking at (for example) television, manga (comics), music, tea ceremony, and ceramic art. The main approach used will be anthropological/sociological. We will look at the production and consumption of art and popular culture. How is it produced, by whom, and for whom? Who engages in these artistic or cultural activities, how, and why? We will ask what we can learn about Japanese society by looking at the way cultural and artistic activities are organized and engaged in. We will also look at some examples of art and popular culture in contemporary Japan – such as comics and television dramas – and ask what these texts tell us about Japanese society. Possibilities for coursework include the analysis of such texts and their penetration into other East Asian societies, including Hong Kong. However, it should be noted that a high standard of analysis will be demanded and the theoretical content is significant.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Examination: A two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester.

---

**JAPN2019. Communication and society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course explores the social behavior of Japanese people that is embedded in their language use. A sociolinguistic approach to Japanese culture is promoted through students' active participation in the empirical analyses of language variation such as dialects, gender difference, and age markers. Coursework also includes the examination of problems that frequently occur in cross-cultural communication.

Assessment: 100% coursework (project, presentation, journal writing, essays).

Prerequisite: Japanese Language I or equivalent.



**JAPN2025. Ainu – a Japanese minority (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course will introduce students to the ancient Ainu people in northern Japan. The Ainu were hunters and gatherers, they look very different from the Japanese (they are often described as 'the hairy Ainu') – and their language bears no connection to the Japanese language. The course will explore the history and culture of the Ainu people, the way they have been treated by the Japanese majority, how they have gradually lost their culture and language, and how recent movements are trying to preserve old customs and ways of thinking. In the course, we shall also learn a little bit of the Ainu language.

Assessment: 100% coursework (portfolio, presentations, essays).

---

**JAPN2026. Japanese language III extended (6 credits)**

This *language intensive* course is designed for students who have spent one year studying in Japan or who have a similar level of proficiency in Japanese\*. The course introduces activities that integrate the four language skills, listening, speaking, reading, and writing, and it will help students achieve near-native level of proficiency.

(\* For these students, a recommendation from a teacher of Department of Japanese Studies is required).

Assessment: 100% coursework (assignments, projects, presentation).

---

**JAPN2029. Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course looks at the Hong Kong popular music scene since the 1950s, paying particular attention to the way Japanese popular music was integrated into Hong Kong music scene after the mid-1980s, when the influence of Japanese popular music became highly visible. It also examines how socio-political developments in Hong Kong have shaped the characteristics of the local popular music industry and have affected the way it has selected, imported, and distributed Japanese popular music. By so doing, we will look at the issues of the cultural image construction of Japan in Hong Kong. The main approach used will be anthropological rather than musicological or ethno musicological. The course does not require Japanese language proficiency.

The priority for selection will be given to the students who do not major in Japanese Studies.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, assignments, presentation and tests).

---

**JAPN2030. Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course focuses on cross-cultural communications involving Japanese professionals. We will explore how and why members of different groups misunderstand each other in spoken, written and electronically mediated communication. We will consider the ways in which people use language to claim and to display their own complex and multiple identities. Rather than imposing one style on all Japanese or Chinese people, we will take a situation-based approach to professional communication across cultures.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays).

**JAPN2031. The media and Japan (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This *interdisciplinary content* course introduces students to the workings of the electronic media in Japan. We will focus on the following three areas: coverage of the Hong Kong handover; TV documentary programmes on international affairs; and Japanese TV entertainment programmes available in Hong Kong. We will examine how the Japanese media covered the 1997 handover in comparison with other international media organisations. Students will then watch and analyse feature-length documentaries that influenced subsequent decisions of Japanese Government officials. In addition, we will consider how Hong Kong Chinese have distributed and consumed Japanese cartoons, dramas and entertainment shows since the 1970s.

Assessment: 100% coursework (projects, presentations and essays).

**List A. Japanese Language Courses**

*Second Year*

**JAPN2001. Japanese language II (12 credits)**

*Second and Third Years*

**JAPN1007. Japanese language I(a) (6 credits)**

*Third Year*

**JAPN2020. Japanese language II(a) (6 credits)****JAPN3001. Japanese language III (12 credits)****JAPN3012. Japanese language III(a) (6 credits)****List B. Language Intensive Courses**

*Second Year*

**JAPN2002. Japan in Japanese (6 credits)****JAPN2007. Modern Japanese short stories (6 credits)****JAPN2008. Translation I (Japanese into English) (6 credits)****JAPN2009. Translation I (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)**

*Second and Third Years*

**JAPN2026. Japanese language III extended (6 credits)**

*Third Year*

**JAPN3003. Selected readings in Japanese studies (6 credits)****JAPN3005. Media Japanese (6 credits)****JAPN3007. Translation II (Japanese into English) (6 credits)****JAPN3010. Translation II (Chinese/Japanese, Japanese/Chinese) (6 credits)****JAPN3011. Japanese in popular culture (6 credits)****JAPN3013. Business Japanese (6 credits)**

## List C. Interdisciplinary Content Courses

### *Second and Third Years*

JAPN2003.	Introduction to Japanese literature (6 credits)
JAPN2010.	Japanese business: an anthropological introduction (6 credits)
JAPN2011.	Anthropology of Japan (6 credits)
JAPN2012.	Education in Japan (6 credits)
JAPN2013.	Women in Japan (6 credits)
JAPN2014.	China and Japan (6 credits)
JAPN2015.	Japanese enterprise groupings (6 credits)
JAPN2016.	Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese I Comparative phonology (6 credits)
JAPN2018.	Popular culture and artistic activity in Japan (6 credits)
JAPN2019.	Communication and society (6 credits)
JAPN2024.	Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese III Syntactic features and pedagogical implications (6 credits)
JAPN2025.	Ainu – a Japanese minority (6 credits)
JAPN2027.	Comparative linguistics: Cantonese and Japanese II Phonological transfer and pedagogy in foreign language acquisition (6 credits)
JAPN2029.	Japanese popular music and Hong Kong society (6 credits)
JAPN2030.	Japanese business, culture and communication (6 credits)
JAPN2031.	The media and Japan (6 credits)

### *Third Year*

JAPN3004.	Contemporary Japanese fiction (6 credits)
JAPN3006.	Extended essay in Japanese studies (6 credits)
JAPN3008.	Contemporary Japanese popular music (6 credits)
JAPN3009.	Japanese film (6 credits)
JAPN3014.	Project in Japanese business (6 credits)

The following *interdisciplinary content* courses are available in other Departments (although not all may be offered each year).

### *Second and Third Years*

#### Department of Fine Arts

FINE2008.	The poetics of Japanese narrative painting (6 credits)
FINE2009.	Genji's dream: the courtly arts of Heian Japan (6 credits)
FINE2011.	Japanese Art: the interactive dimension (6 credits)
FINE2021.	Special problems in Asian art (6 credits)

#### Department of History

HIST2008.	Meiji Japan, 1868-1912 (6 credits)
HIST2009.	Modern Japan since 1912 (6 credits)
HIST2026.	Interpreting Japanese history through movies (6 credits)
HIST2040.	Life in Tokugawa Japan, 1603-1868 (6 credits)

## Department of Politics and Public Administration

- POLI0017. Government and business (6 credits)**  
**POLI0018. The Japanese way of politics (6 credits)**  
**POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)**  
**POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)**  
**POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)**  
**POLI0058. Managing the global economy (6 credits)**

## Department of Sociology

- SOCI0017. Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)**  
**SOCI0018. Japanese society (6 credits)**

*Third Year*

## Department of Fine Arts

- FINE3001 Perspectives and methodology in Chinese and Japanese art (6 credits)**

**JOURNALISM AND MEDIA STUDIES CENTRE**

Journalism should be broadly educated and technically skilled. At the Journalism and Media Studies Centre (JMSC), we believe that the best preparation for careers in journalism is a strong liberal arts education coupled with hands-on journalism training, including practical internship at news organizations. Students interested in a career in journalism would benefit from journalism courses but they should major in subjects in the arts, social sciences and the sciences. Students should also hone their language skills in English and Chinese, written and spoken, Cantonese and Putonghua.

**Second and Third Years****JMSC0002. News reporting and writing workshop (6 credits)**

Training in basic reporting and writing skills through lectures and intensive in-class and out-of-class assignments that replicate newsroom situations. Students will learn to write clearly, concisely and accurately for the news media under deadline pressure.

Prerequisite: JMSC0003 unless exempted by the instructor.

Assessment: 100% by coursework.

**JMSC0003. Exploring careers in journalism and the news media (6 credits)**

An overview of issues in the practice of journalism and the news media. Through lectures and seminars, students explore how journalists collect, process and deliver information, what makes news, and the inner-workings of media organizations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**JMSC0015. Cinema and the city (6 credits)**

Through a wide range of international films, including Hong Kong films, the course will examine how cinematic images allow us to experience and understand the events that transform the contemporary city.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**JMSC0016. Cinema and culture (6 credits)**

The course will examine cinema as an art form which reflects world cultures. The primary emphasis will be on filmmakers and their creative work and motion pictures that have made an impact on contemporary views of culture. Students are expected to have some previous experience in film appreciation, aesthetics or history, and a basic knowledge of the grammar of the film medium.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JMSC0019. Media law and ethics (6 credits)**

An overview of problems and issues relating to media laws and ethical considerations that affect journalism and journalists.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JMSC0025. Journalism traditions (6 credits)**

Comparative studies of the evolution of modern mass media, including newspapers, magazines, radio, and television, with special focus on Greater China and Asia.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**JMSC0027. The press, politics and government (6 credits).**

Analysis of the role of mass media and other channels of communication in local and international political processes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LANGUAGE CENTRE**

The Language Centre, through its French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai sections, provides BA degree courses in French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai for the Arts Faculty, as well as some certificate and voluntary courses available to students of all Faculties. The number of places in each group is limited in order to ensure an appropriate environment for language learning.

---

***Major in French***

Students enrolled in French courses in their first year may choose to major in French in their second and third years. The objective of the programme is to bring participants to a high level of proficiency in the language as well as to provide them with a sound knowledge of French society and culture.

In order to declare a major in French, applicants must initially complete two foundation courses in their first year (*French Language I.1* and *French Language I.2*, first and second semesters, 18 credits in all) and achieve Grade C minimum in these courses. In addition, applicants will normally be required to take part in an intensive course offered by the Centre at the end of the second semester (usually in June).

In their second and third years of study, students pursuing a major in French must take a total of 48 credits of French courses which should normally be distributed as follows: in the Second Year, 24 credits from courses at Level 200, of which 12 credits must be from the core language course, i.e., *French Language II.1*; in the Third Year, 24 credits from courses at Level 300, of which 12 credits must be from the core language course, i.e., *French Language III.1*. (See list of French courses). In addition, students will normally be required to take part in an intensive course offered by the Centre at the end of the fourth semester (usually in June). Alternatively, students will be strongly encouraged to participate in a linguistic stay in France during the summer.

### ***Language Minors***

A language minor will provide students with a good command of the four different language skills: speaking, listening, reading and writing. A language minor will also allow students to gain a deeper insight into the contemporary life and culture of the respective country. Languages combine well with all major programmes offered within the Arts Faculty and they also provide students with additional opportunities to pursue further studies overseas.

In order to qualify for a Minor in a language, students must complete a total of 24 credits in their second (12 credits) and third (12 credits) years of studies in one of the languages listed below:

*French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swedish and Thai.*

The recommended courses for a language minor: (All these courses have prerequisites.)

French:	LANG2001.	French Language II.1 (second year, 12 credits)
	LANG3001.	French Language III.1 (third year, 12 credits)
German:	LANG2004.	Deutsch II.1 (second year, 12 credits)
	LANG3007.	Deutsch III.1 (third year, 12 credits)
Italian:	LANG2010.	Italian II (second year, 12 credits)
	LANG3012.	Italian III (third year, 12 credits)
Portuguese:	LANG2024.	Portuguese II (second year, 12 credits)
	LANG3026.	Portuguese III (third year, 12 credits)
Spanish:	LANG2011.	Spanish II (second year, 12 credits)
	LANG3013.	Spanish III (third year, 12 credits)
Swedish:	LANG2023.	Swedish II (second year, 12 credits)
	LANG3025.	Swedish III (third year, 12 credits)
Thai:	LANG2022.	Thai II (second year, 12 credits)
	LANG3024.	Thai III (third year, 12 credits)

### **French Courses**

#### **First Year**

#### **LANG1001. French I.1 (6 credits)**

This course is intended for complete beginners in French and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills. Classes will be conducted in small groups in order to ensure a high degree of interactivity between participants and teachers. Conversation groups and laboratory groups will also be arranged separately on a regular basis.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**LANG1002. French I.2 (12 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **French I.1**. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students' linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. As in **French I.1**, separate conversation and laboratory groups will be arranged to complement classroom tuition. In addition, participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre's self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as take advantage of resources accessible through various Internet sites. Students intending to proceed to the second year will be provided before the summer break with specifically designed self-learning packages in order to consolidate the first year's work.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **French I.1** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for **French I.2** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework assessment for this course includes (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**Second Year****LANG2001. French language – II.1 (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the first-year work. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition, reading and textual analysis, listening comprehension, composition, translation, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques and materials is used. Small groups are arranged throughout the year to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. All students intending to continue the study of French in their third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in France.

Prerequisites: (i) **French II.1** is open to students who have successfully completed **French I.1** and **I.2**.  
(ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for **French II.1** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework assessment for this course includes (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

**LANG2002. French language and culture – II.2 (6 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and will be based on the exploitation of authentic French material drawn from the media and other sources. The main emphasis will be on the development of reception skills, i.e., aural and reading skills. The objective of this course will be twofold: first, through

an analytic approach, to make the students familiar with the actual use of French in conveying information, opinions, ideas and feelings. Second, to provide students with first-hand facts and details about French contemporary society and customs as well as issues which confront French people. This course is intended to serve as a solid preparation for the period of time students are advised to spend in the country during the summer at the end of their second year.

Prerequisites: (i) **French II.2** is open to students who have successfully completed **French I.1** and **I.2**.  
Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **French II.2** without enrolling in **French II.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment for this course includes (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

---

### **LANG2003. French speech and sounds – II.3 (6 credits)**

This course has the following objectives: i. To step up participants' proficiency in French, with special reference to the spoken and aural dimensions and, ii. To address some issues of sound interferences and areas of comparison between spoken French, Chinese and English. Class activities and tuition in small groups will focus on both the production and reception of the spoken language, with particular respect to sound discrimination and articulation, prosody, intonation and control of meaning. Classroom material will be in French, and French will be used as the main medium of tuition. This course is taught throughout the two semesters.

Prerequisites: (i) **French II.3** is open to students who have successfully completed **French I.1** and **I.2**.  
Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **French II.3** without enrolling in **French II.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment for this course includes (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

---

### **LANG2033. Introduction to French/Chinese translation – II.4 (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to consolidate students' knowledge of French grammar and structure through a systematic training in translating materials from French to Chinese and conversely. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and Chinese. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., press articles, bilingual documents, dialogues, literature, general correspondence, etc.

Prerequisites: (i) **French II.4** is open to students who have successfully completed **French I.2**.  
Alternatively, students must provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite course.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **French II.4** without enrolling in **French II.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) oral presentation; (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the first semester.



**LANG2034. Introduction to French/English translation – II.5 (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to consolidate students' knowledge of French grammar and structure through a systematic training in translating materials from French to English and conversely. Particular attention will be paid to the correction of common errors caused by cross-influences, at grammatical and lexical levels, between French and English. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., press articles, bilingual documents, dialogues, literature, general correspondence, etc.

Prerequisites: (i) **French II.5** is open to students who have successfully completed **French I.2**. Alternatively, students must provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite course.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **French II.5** without enrolling in **French II.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) oral presentation; (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**Third Year****LANG3001. French language – III.1 (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year in lectures and tutorials and continues to build on the first- and second-year work. Lectures will make use of literary texts and authentic documents (press clippings, etc.) from France and other French-speaking countries, with the aim of stimulating critical reading. This study of authentic materials will also help students to investigate further French civilization and contemporary culture.

Prerequisite: (i) **French III.1** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**

(ii) Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

Assessment: One Examination and a Coursework element which shall count respectively 60% and 40% of the final grade awarded.

The Examination for **French III.1** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework assessment may include: (i) progress tests; (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

---

**LANG3003. French/English translation: Practical skills – III.3 (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to reinforce students' language skills in French while making them aware of problems arising from transferring meaning from French to English and conversely. Most of the work will focus on common translation difficulties between the two languages and will propose various ways of dealing with them. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., literature, press articles, movies, bilingual documents, business correspondence etc.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.3** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.3** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) oral presentation (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**LANG3004. French/Chinese translation: Practical skills – III.4 (3 credits)**

The objective of this course is to reinforce students' language skills in French while making them aware of problems arising from transferring meaning from French to Chinese, and conversely. Most of the work will focus on common translation difficulties between the two languages and will propose ways of dealing with them. This course, very practical in nature, will make use of materials drawn from various sources, e.g., literature, press articles, movies, bilingual documents, business correspondence, etc.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.4** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.4** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) oral presentation (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG3005. French and business – III.5 (3 credits)**

This course is an introduction to the use of French in a business context. A variety of topics and situations will be studied, such as trade negotiation and deals, sale representation, commercial correspondence, contractual agreements or disputes, marketing strategies, advertising campaigns, job application etc. The teaching materials used for this course will be drawn from actual sources and discussions will mainly focus on the local region, with the particular aim to provide the participants with first-hand facts and information on the economic relationship between France and Hong Kong.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.5** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.5** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) oral presentation (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG3022. French eastern narratives – III.6 (3 credits)**

This course offers an overview of how French writers and travellers wrote about China, Indochina and Japan over the last three centuries, from the debut of French global travelling (early 18th century) to recent periods. Through the close study of depictions and narrations of encounters, the objective will be to recognize trends, contradictions and invariants in this process of channeling home the Far East, either as a romanticized cultural alternative or as a strong repellent. The extent to which these various accounts and representations have inspired the aesthetics and literary productions of contemporary France will also be examined in some instances. The medium of discussion will be mainly French, and the texts (novel excerpts, press, films, iconography) will be in French or, where appropriate, provided with translation.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.6** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite courses.

(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.6** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) short essays (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) presentations and (iv) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**LANG3033. French media and advertising – III.7 (3 credits)**

The discussion will start with an inventory of the media in France with a particular focus on newspapers and magazines, including web-based publications. It will examine how the press targets the public, using various areas of specialization (e.g. political affiliation, social and current affairs, women issues, family and domestic sphere, etc.). In a second phase, we shall look into how advertising techniques convey information as well as messages of various natures. While studying a large range of selected materials, we will aim at disclosing the rhetorical devices at work in the process of construction of images, mainly inspired by prevalent social mythologies and stereotyped representations.

The discussion will make extensive use of materials under various forms, such as pictures, posters, advertisements, videos, TV excerpts, press samples, webpages etc. The main medium of instruction is French.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.7** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.7** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) oral presentations; (ii) periodic assessment; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG3034. French essay writing – III.8 (3 credits)**

In this course, participants will receive tuition and guidance to complete an extended piece of writing in French based on a topic of their choice and in connection with France. Participants will be also encouraged to make use of any materials they may have collected in the course of their stay in the country. The objectives of this course are to increase students' confidence in their handling of written French, to stimulate creative writing and to enhance composition skills.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.8** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.8** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes composition writing and oral presentation.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**LANG3035. French literature of the 19th and 20th centuries – III.9 (3 credits)**

This course offers an introduction to the major movements and authors that have shaped French literature over the last two centuries. The course is particularly designed to enhance participants' reading and analytical skills in the French language and to broaden their knowledge of French life and culture. The discussion will concentrate on texts and excerpts from works in a variety of genres (fiction, drama and poetry) chosen for their representativeness of a range of literary trends, from Romanticism, Realism and Symbolism to more recent trends, such as Surrealism, the Theatre of the Absurd and the Nouveau Roman. The medium of instruction and discussion will be French, and the texts examined will be in French.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.9** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, students must provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in the prerequisite course.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.9** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessments: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) short essays; (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) presentations and (iv) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**LANG3036. French society and cinema – III.2 (3 credits)**

This course will make use of films to examine French contemporary society. Cinema will be discussed in connection with social changes brought about since the Second World War. The aim of this course is to use images to analyse how cinema through its language and technical evolution reflected the transformations of modern society.

The discussion will start with 'conventional films', e.g., narratives following the nineteenth century literary tradition focusing on plots and characters. The '*Nouvelle Vague*' and its celebrated directors François Truffaut and Eric Rohmer will help to give a better understanding of the revolution triggered by the post war period and marking the birth of a new film language. Students will use films to discuss social, cultural and gender issues. The role of women in French society will be examined through a series of recent films. The main medium of instruction is French.

Prerequisites: (i) **French III.2** is open to students who have successfully completed **French II.1**. Alternatively, candidates will be required to provide evidence that they have attained elsewhere a standard at least comparable to a pass in prerequisite courses.  
(ii) Students may not enrol in **French III.2** without enrolling in **French III.1**.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework assessment may include: (i) oral presentations; (ii) periodic assessment; (iii) other coursework, as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**German Courses****First Year****LANG1003. German I.1 (Deutsch I.1) (6 credits)**

This beginners course in German language does not require any previous knowledge of German. Students will acquire basic linguistic and communicative skills in German in speaking, listening, reading and writing. Apart from their regular language classes students will be taught in small tutorial groups to ensure an environment highly conducive to practising language skills.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: Coursework 100%. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests; (ii) participation in class; and (iii) assignments.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**LANG1004. German I.2 (Deutsch I.2) (12 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **German I.1**. It combines linguistic and communicative skills in German with a balanced emphasis on speaking, listening, reading and writing. Small tutorial groups, which will be arranged in addition to the regular language classes, will provide the students with an environment highly conducive to practising their language skills. The course will also encourage students to exploit resources available on the *Internet* and in the Centre's self-practice facilities (*Language Resource Centres and Practice Labs*) which provide a wide range of materials for language practice, including audio and videotapes, CD-ROMs and computer programmes. Students intending to proceed to the second year will be provided with a range of self-access materials to maintain and enhance their skills during the summer break.

- Prerequisite: **German I.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German I.2** without having enrolled in **German I.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.
- Examination: The Examination for **German I.2** consists of one written paper of two hours' duration, an oral examination and a coursework assessment element.
- Assessment: Coursework shall count 40% of the grade awarded for the paper taken in the Examination: **German I.2**. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests; (ii) participation in class; and (iii) assignments.
- This course will be offered in the second semester.
- 

## Second Year

### LANG2004. Deutsch II.1 (German II.1 ) (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and builds on the first year work. It offers a balanced range of the various language skills through further syntax acquisition; reading and text analysis, listening comprehension, composition, oral expression and communicative skills. A wide variety of teaching techniques is used. Small tutorial groups are arranged throughout the year to ensure maximum opportunities for interactive practice. All students continuing their studies in the third year are strongly encouraged to attend a summer intensive immersion course in Germany.

- Prerequisites: **German I.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German II.1** without having enrolled for **German I.2** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.
- Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element. In addition, the examination also includes an oral examination.
- Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for **German II.1**. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed.
- 

### LANG2008. Übersetzungsübung I (Translation exercise I) (6 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year. Students will practise written translations from German to Chinese using a variety of texts written in different styles. The main aim will be to make students aware of the major structural differences between German and Chinese and to provide them with additional information on contemporary German topics.

- Prerequisites: **German I.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Translation Exercise** without having enrolled in **German I.2** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **Translation Exercise** without enrolling in **German II.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.
- Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element.
- Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for **Translation Exercise**. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic translation assignments; and (ii) progress tests.

**LANG2020. Landeskunde Deutschland (German Area Studies) (6 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to geographical, political, social and cultural aspects of Germany in the 20th century. It focuses on developments in Germany after 1949 and covers the following topics: From Separation to Reunification, Everyday Life in the Two Germanys, Are the Germans One People Now?, Germany's Political System, Press, Radio and Television, Foreigners in Germany, and Germany in the Global Economy.

Guest speakers from Hong Kong's German speaking community will be invited to give talks on selected topics and students will be encouraged to make use of IT to study certain topics in depth. While most of the lectures will be conducted in English, German will be used in the tutorials to provide students with the necessary vocabulary and structures for the various topics.

Prerequisites: **German I.2** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German Area Studies** without having taken **German I.2** will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **German Area Studies** without enrolling in **German II.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 50% of the grade awarded for **German Area Studies**. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) (IT) projects; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**Second/Third Years****LANG0002. Introducing Germany and the Germans (3 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to contemporary life in Germany. Topics to be covered include: The German Language, Outline of German History, Geographical Diversity, Housing and Urban Development, Federalism, Germany's Political System, Festivals, Family, Youth, Education, Arts and Music, Leisure Time and Sports, Protection of the Environment, Women and Society, and Cultural Representations in Advertising. All lectures will be conducted in English.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% Coursework. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) (IT) projects; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**Third Year****LANG3007. Deutsch III.1 (German III.1) (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **German II.1**. It offers a balanced range of language skills, and furthers the exploration of various linguistic aspects of the language. Special attention will be given to language registers and patterns, specific terminology and structures used in a variety of fields (literature, press reports, business documents etc.) with the aim of stimulating critical reading. As in **German II.1** small tutorial groups will be arranged to ensure oral fluency and writing techniques as well as the development of oral skills in the context of argumented discourses and presentations.

- Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German III.1** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.
- Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element. In addition, the examination also includes an oral examination.
- Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for **German III.1**. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed.
- 

#### **LANG3008. Lektürekurs (Reading course) (3 credits)**

This course will only be offered during the first semester. It enhances and extends the language skills acquired during the first and second year through systematic study in the form of text analysis, discussion, translation, etc. of contemporary texts and documents written in different styles such as newspaper and magazine articles, songs etc. drawn from current affairs and life in Germany.

Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Reading Course** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **Reading Course** without enrolling in **German III.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for **Reading Course**. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) IT projects; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **LANG3009. Auszüge aus der deutschen Literatur (Extracts from German literature) (3 credits)**

This course will only be offered during the second semester. It will introduce students to works of the most prominent German writers through the study of selected readings in German from different periods of German literature. The main emphasis will be on 20th century texts.

Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Extracts from German Literature** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **Extracts from German Literature** without enrolling in **German III.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for **Extracts from German Literature**. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) (IT) projects; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

#### **LANG3010. Projektkurs (German project) (3 credits)**

In this course students will study in depth an approved topic of their choice in German. They will present their findings in class and submit a written project of around 2,000 words in German at the end of the course. Students wishing to enrol in this course are encouraged to make use of their stay in Germany to collect materials for their project.

Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **German Project** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **German Project** without enrolling in **German III.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 100% of the grade awarded for **German Project**. Coursework includes (i) presentation of topic in class and regular attendance of and participation in discussion sessions (40%); and (ii) written project (60%).

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### **LANG3023. Übersetzungsübung II (Translation exercise II) (6 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year. Students will practise written translations from German to English and English to German using a variety of texts written in different styles. The main aim will be to make students aware of the major structural and lexical differences between German and English and to provide them with additional information on contemporary German topics.

Prerequisites: **German II.1** or comparable level acquired elsewhere. Students wishing to be admitted to **Translation Exercise II** without having enrolled in **German II.1** previously will have to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily. Students may not enrol in **Translation Exercise II** without enrolling in **German III.1** unless they have previously attained a standard adequate to enable them to complete the course satisfactorily.

Examination: The Examination for this course consists of one three-hour paper and a coursework assessment element.

Assessment: Coursework assessment shall count 40% of the grade awarded for **Translation Exercise II**. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic translation assignments; and (ii) progress tests.

---

## **Italian Courses**

### **First Year**

#### **LANG1007. Italian I.1 (6 credits)**

This course is intended for complete beginners in Italian and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### **LANG1008. Italian I.2 (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of **Italian I.1**. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students' linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. Participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre's self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as to take advantage of resources accessible through Internet.



Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Italian I.1** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Coursework assessment for this course includes (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Second Year

### LANG2010. Italian II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Italian I.2**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Italian language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Italian II** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Italian II** without having previously completed **Italian I.2** and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Italian II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) participation in class.

---

### LANG2031. Italian reading course (3 credits)

This course is offered to the students at intermediate and advanced levels in order to improve their skills in textual analysis, discussion and translation of contemporary texts and documents such as magazines, newspaper, songs and articles related to current Italian life.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Italian I.2** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Students may not enrol in the Italian Reading Course without enrolling in **Italian II**

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) attendance and (iii) participation in class.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### LANG2032. Italian and business (3 credits)

This course is offered to students at intermediate and advanced levels. It will focus on a variety of topics, such as commercial correspondence, marketing strategies, advertising campaigns, job applications, banking terminology, etc.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Italian I.2** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Students may not enrol in the Italian and Business Course without enrolling in **Italian II**

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) oral presentation; (ii) periodic assignments; (iii) attendance and (iv) participation in class.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

## Second/Third Years

### LANG0001. Introduction to Italian life and culture (3 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will give an outline of Italian civilization and contemporary culture in its manifold aspects, ranging from arts, history, music, Italian customs and traditions in the different regions and cities, to cinema and tourism, food, fashion, environment, education, sport and politics with particular focus on the youth world. The teacher will present a variety of subjects making use of videos and authentic materials (music, magazines, advertising, etc.), from which the students will choose topics and discuss them in discussion groups. Each group will then present, at the end of the course, a project on a particular subject. In case the students should be interested, some basic knowledge of the Italian language will be offered.

Pre-requisite: Nil.

Assessment: continuous assessment and projects.

Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Italian is not necessary.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Third Year

### LANG3012. Italian III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Italian language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Italy, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Italian III** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Italian III** without having previously completed **Italian II** and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Italian III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

---

## Portuguese Courses

### First Year

#### LANG1025. Portuguese for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to enable students to reach a basic communicative competence in Portuguese, while developing their listening, speaking, writing and reading skills. Development of self-learning strategies will also be introduced in the later part of the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class, and (iii) assignments.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**LANG1026. Portuguese for beginners - Part II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of Portuguese for beginners I. Pre-requisite for Portuguese for beginners II: Portuguese for beginners I.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class, and (iii) assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**Second Year****LANG2024. Portuguese II (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Portuguese for beginners – Part II**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Portuguese language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Portuguese II** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Portuguese II** without having previously completed **Portuguese for beginners – Part II** and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Portuguese II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

---

**Third Year****LANG3026. Portuguese III (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Portuguese language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Portugal, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Portuguese III** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Portuguese III** without having previously completed **Portuguese II** and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Portuguese III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

## Spanish Courses

### First Year

#### LANG1010. Spanish I.1 (6 credits)

This course is intended for complete beginners in Spanish and does not require any previous knowledge of the language. Participants will acquire a basic knowledge in the four areas of competence (listening, speaking, reading and writing) with a particular emphasis on communicative skills.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class and (iii) various assignments.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### LANG1011. Spanish I.2 (6 credits)

This course is a continuation of **Spanish I.1**. It will further develop the four areas of competence with the view of expanding students' linguistic, pronunciation and communicative skills. Participants will be asked to make use of a range of materials available in the Centre's self-access facilities (which include audio, video, CD Rom and computer programmes), as well as to take advantage of resources accessible through Internet.

Prerequisite: Students must have satisfactorily completed **Spanish I.1** or provide evidence that they have attained a comparable level elsewhere.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Coursework assessment for this course includes (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class, (iii) various assignments, and (iv) an oral test.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### Second Year

#### LANG2011. Spanish II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Spanish I.2**. The course builds further on the first year's work and widens the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Spanish and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish II** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June and/or September.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish II** without having previously completed **Spanish I.2** and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: The examination and coursework elements count 60% and 40% respectively.

Examination: The examination for **Spanish II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

## Second/Third Years

### **LANG0003. Introduction to Spanish culture (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to give students an insight into Spanish culture and traditions. Students will learn about aspects of the traditions, history, art, music and customs of all Spanish speaking countries. Guest speakers (all from different Spanish speaking countries) will give talks about interesting aspects of their culture and there will be discussions about all subjects presented in the course.

Prerequisites: Nil.

Assessment: 100% Coursework. Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) projects; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed.

Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Spanish is not necessary.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

### **LANG0004. Introduction to Spanish and Spanish American literature (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course will introduce students to the basics of Spanish and Spanish American Literature and will briefly analyse the representation of educated and popular culture in Spanish and Hispanic literature. These objectives will be tackled in three ways:

presenting a brief history of Spanish and Spanish American literature (illustrated with a selection of texts from different genres);

focusing on literature as a representation of educated and popular culture;

examining this literature as represented in films;

The course will also look at the features of contemporary literature. A selection of texts will be provided in English and Spanish.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% Coursework.

Medium of instruction: English. Knowledge of Spanish is not necessary.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

## Third Year

### **LANG3013. Spanish III (12 credits)**

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Spanish language through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Spain, as well as her history and culture.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish III** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June and/or September.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Spanish III** without having previously completed **Spanish II** and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: The examination and coursework elements count 60% and 40% respectively.

Examination: The examination of **Spanish III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

## Swedish Courses

### First Year

#### LANG1023. Swedish for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is for beginners of Swedish and will introduce the students to the essentials of the Swedish language through a communicative approach. The course will cover speaking, listening, reading and writing but with emphasis on speaking. Students will learn how to interact in everyday situations such as shopping, taking the bus, asking for directions, making a phone call etc. Apart from using textbooks, additional classroom materials, such as videos, and other audio-visuals will be used.

The course will also give students an insight to Swedish culture and society. Since Sweden, Norway and Denmark are closely related in culture and language, the course will also give a wider understanding of Scandinavia.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class, and assignments.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

#### LANG1024. Swedish for beginners - Part II (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of Swedish for beginners I. Pre-requisite for Swedish for beginners II: Swedish for beginners I.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class, and (iii) assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

### Second Year

#### LANG2023. Swedish II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Swedish for beginners – Part II**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Swedish language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Swedish II** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Swedish II** without having previously completed **Swedish for beginners – Part II** and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Swedish II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

## Third Year

### LANG3025. Swedish III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Swedish language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Sweden, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Swedish III** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Swedish III** without having previously completed **Swedish II** and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Swedish III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

## Thai Courses

### First Year

#### LANG1021. Thai for beginners - Part I (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to teach complete beginners the basics of Thai with respect to the four linguistic skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing. Students will also be introduced to Thai culture and society. Vocabulary and grammar will be presented in a communicative way for a variety of situations, e.g. making introductions, leave-taking, giving directions, buying things, making telephone calls and so on. The emphasis will be on the spoken language, as well as on providing a secure foundation for basic Thai.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class, and (iii) assignments.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

#### LANG1022. Thai for beginners - Part II (6 credits)

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a continuation of Thai for beginners I. Pre-requisite for Thai for beginners II: Thai for beginners I.

Assessment: 100% coursework. Coursework includes: (i) progress tests, (ii) participation in class, and (iii) assignments.

This course will be offered in the second semester.

## Second Year

### LANG2022. Thai II (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and is a continuation of **Thai for beginners – Part II**. The intention is to build further on the junior level work and widen the scope of exposure to more complex aspects of the language. The teaching will diversify through the use of more elaborate material and a variety of teaching techniques including work with video. Participants are expected to consolidate their understanding of Thai language and develop further their production and reception skills.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Thai II** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 1) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Thai II** without having previously completed **Thai for beginners – Part II** and Transition 1 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Thai II** consists of one written paper of 2-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

---

## Third Year

### LANG3024. Thai III (12 credits)

This course is taught throughout the year and continues to build on the two previous years' work on a more advanced level. The intention is to lead participants towards a fairly comprehensive understanding of the Thai language features through the study of a variety of documents (written, audio and video). The selection of documents will also serve as a basis for discussion on some social issues regarding contemporary Thailand, as well as her history and cultural background.

Prerequisites: Students wishing to be admitted to **Thai III** will be required to attend an intensive session (Transition 2) usually held in June.

Students wishing to be admitted to **Thai III** without having previously completed **Thai II** and Transition 2 will be required to satisfy the Faculty Board through the Director of the Language Centre that they have attained elsewhere the required standard.

Assessment: One examination and a coursework element which shall count 60% and 40% respectively of the final grade awarded.

Examination: The examination for **Thai III** consists of one written paper of 3-hour duration and a separate oral examination.

Coursework may include the following: (i) periodic assignments; (ii) progress tests; and (iii) other coursework as prescribed, such as long essays, translations, directed reading, etc.

---

## LINGUISTICS

In the Department of Linguistics, students can investigate a variety of different languages and through such investigations, come to a better understanding of the shared structure and broad variation of the world's languages. The BA programme provides a firm foundation so that those students who wish to do so can go on to pursue advanced studies in linguistics.



The undergraduate programme in Linguistics permits students to combine in a single field a variety of Arts and Social Science subjects and to develop their analytic skills in depth. Students are encouraged to explore with members of staff the many relationships of linguistics with other fields in order to discover the programme that best suits their individual goals and interests.

---

## The Linguistics Majors

The following B.A. majors and programmes are offered in the department or in conjunction with other departments as indicated below:

Major in Linguistics  
Major in Human Language Technology  
Programme in Linguistics and Philosophy

The Department also contributes to the teaching of the B.Cognitive Science Programme. For details, please refer to the B.Cognitive Science syllabuses.

---

## (1) Major in Linguistics

In addition to passing the first-year course, 'Introduction to Linguistics', majors in linguistics must pass at least eight second- and third-year courses (or the equivalent) including **LING2049. Linguistics field trip**. Students may take more than this minimum number of linguistics courses, and are encouraged to do so, but should also try to achieve a balance in their Arts curriculum as well.

---

## First-year Courses

The first-year courses are one-semester courses open to all students who have fulfilled the University's entrance requirements.

'**Introduction to linguistics**' (**LING1001**) is prerequisite for all courses taught in the Department of Linguistics. '**Language.com**' (**LING1002**) is also offered as a University broadening course.

---

## **LING1001. Introduction to linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to the basic topics of linguistics: speech sounds and sound patterns, word formation, sentence structure, the study of meaning and language change. It aims to show how linguists investigate their subject matter, which will include such interesting topics as children's language, animal communication compared with human language, why there are different dialects in languages, writing systems and language and the brain.

Students will learn about the general structure that underlies all language as well as the great variety of existing human languages. The course gives plenty of practice in solving problems, analysing languages, including Chinese and English, and dealing with data.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING1002. Language.com: Language in the contemporary world (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The 21st century will be the Age of the Internet. What is the Internet all about? Essentially, it is about information and communication. Language is by far the most important means of communication and information exchange amongst human beings. To fully appreciate our own place in the contemporary world and to make the best of the many opportunities presented by new forms of communication, we need to know more about language. This course is an introduction to language: its nature and its relationship with facets of life in the contemporary world.

- Natural Language Processing: Can computers be trained to understand and produce human language?
- Machine Translation: Can computers do translations automatically and accurately?
- Corpus Linguistics: What kinds of language data are available on the Internet? How can they be used to make grammars and dictionaries?
- Chinese Language Computing: How many kinds of Chinese inputting methods are there? Which one suits you best?
- Internet Tools: What tools are available on the Internet for the learning of languages and linguistics?
- Human-Computer Interfaces: What is “ergonomics”? What is currently being done to improve the quality of communication between people and their computers?
- Speech analysis: What computer programs are available to analyse speech signals? How can computer speech analysis help language learners?

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**Second- and Third-year Courses**

The following courses are designed for those who wish to pursue linguistics as a major interest as well as for those who opt to study linguistics as a complement to another programme of study. Unless otherwise specified, they are open to second- and third-year students and have no prerequisites other than '**Introduction to linguistics**'. All are taught as one-semester courses. Course availability is subject to staffing considerations.

---

**LING2001. Computational linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How can the computer help us analyse sentences? Can a computer really understand language? These are some of the questions explored in this course. The course will introduce basic concepts and techniques of natural language understanding and Chinese language information processing.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2002. Conversation analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How is it that we manage to have conversations in which lots of different people take part and everyone has a chance to speak as well as to listen? At least, most of the time we manage that all right. What rules are followed when we have conversations? On this course you will discover what these rules are and learn how to describe the structure of conversations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on structural and cognitive aspects of meaning which are relevant to the description and theory of grammar. Examples will be drawn from Cantonese, Mandarin and English together with some other European and Asian languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2004. Phonetics: describing sounds (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The focus will be on articulatory phonetics; the speech mechanism; the description and classification of sounds of languages; sounds in context; prosodic features; tone and intonation; and practical work.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2008. Special topic in linguistics I (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Specialised courses offered by staff members.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2009. Languages of the world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This survey of the world's languages covers how languages are classified into families and types as well as issues of linguistic diversity and endangered languages. The course involves regular practical work. The course satisfies the prerequisite for the advanced course, **Language typology**, and also provides useful background for all courses in linguistics.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2010. Language and dialect (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course you will learn about the difference between a standard language and a dialect, with particular reference to Modern Chinese and British English.

We shall study the writing systems of Modern Chinese and British English, and compare them with alternative systems which are used for Chinese and English dialects.

You will learn to distinguish between 'Chinese' and 'Putonghua', between 'Cantonese' (廣州話), 'Guangdong speech' (廣東話), and 'Yue dialects' (粵方言), and between *wenyan* (文言) and *baihua* (白話); similar phenomena in British English will also be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2011. Language and literacy in the information age (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims at helping students gain an understanding of the role of language and literacy education in the socio-economic development of many societies. After the introduction of basic concepts in sociolinguistics and in literacy, we will compare linguistic situations in selected parts of the world and then take up major issues such as multilingualism, literacy education, including definitions and types of literacies, language planning policies, and how to integrate linguistic and educational issues in development projects.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2012. Experimental phonetics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The theoretical and instrumental study of the acoustic properties of speech sounds; classificatory criteria; speech analysis and synthesis; experimental techniques; and laboratory work.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2013. Language typology: the study of linguistic diversity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

A survey of the structural diversity of the world's languages. Topics covered include: notions of language type; morphological, case marking, and word order typology; diachronic and areal typology; universals of language and their explanation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2017. Advanced studies in linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Specialised courses based on current research interests of staff members.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2018. Lexical-functional grammar (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An intensive introduction to the architecture of Lexical-Functional Grammar, with a discussion of how this syntactic theory addresses issues such as levels of representation, lexical integrity, complex predicates, serial verbs, optimality, and the syntax - semantics interface.

Prerequisite: **Syntactic theory**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2019. Contrastive study of the sound systems of English and Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Do you think the sounds of English and Chinese are very similar or very different? Is it possible to write Chinese words using phonetic signs instead of characters? You will find out the answers to these and other questions on this course as you investigate and describe the sound and writing systems of these two great world languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2022. Pragmatics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the study of Pragmatics. Topics include: linguistic meaning, speaker intention, interpretation and understanding, context, deixis, reference, conversational implicature, inference, presupposition, speech acts, politeness, relevance theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2023. Discourse analysis (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to Discourse analysis. Topics include: linguistic forms and functions, speech and writing, discourse topic, discourse structure, information structure, cohesion and coherence, knowledge representation.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2024. Lexicology and lexicography (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to Lexicology and lexicography. Topics include: kinds of unit in the lexicon, lexical entries, lexical relations, lexical semantics, the mental lexicon, application of lexicology to dictionary compilation in various languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2025. Corpus linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to Corpus linguistics. Topics include: the use of corpora in linguistic analysis, methods in the design and collection of spoken and written texts, uses of corpora. Topics are discussed with reference to various languages.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2026. Special topic in linguistics II (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Specialised courses offered by staff members.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The notion of the phoneme and its place in phonology; distinctive features; phonological processes and their description; rules and representations.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2028. Syntactic description (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In every language sentences are structured in similar ways. In this course you will learn about the different kinds of grammatical patterning which are found in the world's languages. We shall look at English – the most intensively studied language in the world – and one other quite different language. This year the language is Latin, like English a world language for many centuries.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2029. Morphological description (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course students will study word structure and word formation. Topics may include the interaction of sounds and word structure; analyzing words; foreign influences on vocabulary; coining new words; and vocabulary in a social context (slang, jargon, etc.).

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2030. Morphological theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Current models of morphology, including Lexical Morphology, Word and Paradigm Morphology, Prosodic Morphology, and other models.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2031. Phonological theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Current theories of phonology, including Autosegmental Phonology, Metrical Theory, Lexical Phonology, Optimality Theory and other models.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2032. Syntactic theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course explores recent theoretical approaches to syntax, focusing on generative grammar.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2033. Contrastive grammar of English and Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we will compare the grammar of English and Chinese. We will find some surprising similarities as well as interesting differences. You will have a firmer grasp of the structure of both languages by the end of the course. In addition, you will be in a better position to undertake bilingual research or to become effective language instructors or translators.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2034. Psycholinguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to psycholinguistics and will examine issues concerning how language is acquired and processed in the mind. Essential concepts of the mental processes involved in language comprehension and production and contemporary research will be covered in this course. There will also be practical laboratory classes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2035. Neurolinguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce students to the study of the representation and processing of language in the brain. Recent literature regarding language organization in the cortex, language disorder, and the bilingual brain will be reviewed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2036. Child language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The focus of this course is on language acquisition, including a consideration of the stages of language development, biological basis, language disorders, dyslexia, and the differences in learning to speak and read in Chinese and English.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2037. Bilingualism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a general introduction to the study of bilingualism from a psycholinguistic perspective, with emphasis on various aspects of bilingual behavior, such as code-switching and language mixing. Age-related differences, the influence of the first language, the role of attitudes, motivation and learning contexts will be examined.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2038. Historical linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The purpose of the course is to introduce students to the principles of historical linguistics and the methods linguistics use to describe and account for language change. The emphasis is on sound change; however, morphological and syntactic changes are also discussed. The language data to be examined are mainly from the Indo-European language family and Chinese dialects.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2039. Language variation and change (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course introduces the students to language variation and its implications in the discussion of language change in progress. It also covers the general principles involved in language change as well as the problems of the initiation and transmission of language change.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2040. Languages in contact (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

No language develops in isolation and all show some effect of contact with other languages. The course will introduce basic concepts in language contact, distinguishing phenomena such as code-mixing and lexical borrowing, language shift and substrate influence. It will then focus on the most striking cases of “contact languages” – pidgins and creoles – and the challenges and opportunities they present to linguistics. The course will feature audio-visual materials illustrating contact languages such as Singapore Colloquial English, Macau Portuguese creole and Haitian French creole.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2041. Language and information technology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course continues with major themes from **LING1002 Language.com** and aims to create a greater awareness of the growing importance of language information processing methods. The objective of the course is to explore the interface between language, linguistics, and information technology.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2042. Educational linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is preferably taken after **LING2011 Language and literacy in the information age** and examines how linguistic and literacy issues impact educational systems in various parts of the world. The course aims to lead students to an understanding of the cognitive and social underpinnings of the interface between language, literacy and education.

Prerequisite: **Language and literacy**

Assessment: 100% coursework.



**LING2043. Language and animal communication (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines communication systems amongst animals, including bees, apes, parrots and dolphins, against the background of human language. The course also explores the question of whether it is possible for animals to learn human language.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2044. Language and culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The aim of this course is to explore the relationship between language and culture. Topics include language and thought, language and religion, language and nationalities, language and social changes.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2045. Writing systems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to the major writing systems of the world.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2046. British linguistics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is a study of the major contributions to linguistic description and theory made by British linguists from the later part of the 19<sup>th</sup> century to the end of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2047. Optimality theory (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces current issues in Optimality Theory, with reference to phonology, morphology, and syntax.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**LING2048. Language and cognition (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines various issues regarding cognition and language. Topics to be covered are:

- How is language processed and represented in the mind and the brain?
- Commonalities and particularities of cognitive and neuro-cognitive processing of different languages (e.g., English and Chinese).
- First and second language learning. What are the critical factors that facilitate language learning?
- The Chinese language and the brain; language and reading disorders.
- Applied cognitive psychology of language. Headline designs for newspaper, TV program, and advertisement. Cognitive basis of persuasion.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**LING2049. Linguistics field trip (6 credits)**

This is a required course for students majoring in Linguistics or Human Language Technology, and is open only to them. The aim of the course is to provide an opportunity for students of linguistics to have first-hand experience with languages as they are spoken and used in particular settings, and to carry out an empirical investigation on some aspect of a language 'on-site' (e.g. structural, cognitive, socio-cultural, or technological aspects of a language). The field trip is the best way of putting knowledge about language structure and use into practice, and forms an essential part of a linguist's training.

To satisfy the requirements of the course, students should (1) participate in a one-week field trip outside Hong Kong (e.g. to China, Europe, or Africa), led and supervised by members of staff, during their second or third year of study; (2) carry out an empirical investigation of a linguistics topic in consultation with their supervisors; and (3) write up and hand in a report upon return from the field trip. Assessment: Participation in the field trip and a written report.

---

**LING3002. Extended essay (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Individual research on a topic chosen by the student in consultation with staff, in preparation for possible postgraduate work. For third year majors in linguistics only. A proposal should be handed in early September for approval. The thesis which should normally be 8,000 words in length, should be submitted before the end of December. There is no written examination but an oral exam will be required.

---

**(2) Major in Human Language Technology (HLT)****INTRODUCTION: WHAT IS HUMAN LANGUAGE TECHNOLOGY (HLT)?**

Human Language Technology is a relatively new discipline that investigates two main issues. On the one hand it explores the theoretical and practical issues surrounding the ability to get technology, especially modern information communications technology (ICT), to interact with humans using natural language capabilities. On the other hand, it is a discipline that investigates how technologies, especially ICTs, can serve as useful adjuncts to humans in language understanding, including analysis, processing, storage and retrieval. This investigation could lead to practical applications, including the design of online learning environments for language learning and multilingual retrieval for automatic translation.

---

**AIMS AND OBJECTIVES:**

The following are some of the objectives of the proposed programme: (1) to give students a perspective of how technology relates to human language processing; (2) to understand how information communications technology has been applied to different aspects of Linguistics and human language processing and to what effect; (3) to critically evaluate the role of technology in human language processing; and (4) to examine the range of opportunities available to different professionals regarding the application of technology in human language processing.

---

**COMPONENTS OF THE PROGRAMME:**

To obtain a B. A. major in Human Language Technology, students must choose 48 credits in their 2nd and 3rd years from among the courses listed including **LING2049. Linguistics field trip**.



**Second and third years (eight courses):****(c) Linguistics:**

**LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar**  
**LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems**  
**LING2028. Syntactic description**  
**LING2032. Syntactic theory**

**(d) Philosophy:**

**PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science**  
**PHIL2610. Philosophy of language**

and any two of:

**PHIL2060. Wittgenstein**  
**PHIL2220. The mind**  
**PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature**  
**PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese**  
**PHIL2510. Logic**  
**PHIL2511. Paradoxes**  
**PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic**

The remaining eight courses in a student's second/third year programme may be selected from those offered by any department, as permitted by the regulations.

It should be noted that not all courses are offered in both departments every year. Choices are subject to approval by the head of the department.

**MATHEMATICS**

The Department of Mathematics has two broad aims. The first is to give students a formal education in the different fields of mathematics so that the students may develop an appreciation of mathematics both as a subject in its own right, as well as one that has far-reaching applications. The second is to prepare students for graduate study, for the teaching of mathematics in the school, and for positions in business, industry and other areas which require a good grounding in mathematics. Teaching is given in lectures, example classes and tutorials. There will be regular assignments and term tests.

**Courses***First Year***MATH0801. Basic mathematics I (6 credits)**

To provide students with a basic background of calculus that can be applied in various disciplines, aiming at students not having done much mathematics beyond HKCEE mathematics. It can be followed by **MATH0802/1803** or **MATH1811/1812**.

Contents:

- Sets, real numbers.
- Equations and inequalities.
- Functions, graphs and inverses.
- Exponential and logarithmic functions.

- Limits and continuity.
- Differentiation, chain rule, implicit differentiation.
- Higher order derivatives, curve sketching, maxima and minima.
- Definite and indefinite integrals, change of variables.

Prerequisites: HKCEE Mathematics (Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or Mathematics at higher level not allowed).

Duration: One semester (first semester; repeated in second semester)

Assessment: One 2½-hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

---

### **MATH0802. Basic mathematics II (6 credits)**

To provide students with a more solid background of calculus of one and several variables and of matrices that can be applied in various disciplines, aiming at students having taken an elementary calculus course. It can be followed by **MATH1803**.

Contents

- Set and functions.
- Limits and continuity.
- Differentiation, application, Taylor approximation.
- Integration, techniques, improper integrals.
- Functions of several variables, partial differentiation.
- Maxima and minima, Lagrange multipliers.
- Double integrals.
- Matrices, systems of linear equations, inverses, determinants.
- Eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

Prerequisites: HKCEE Mathematics and Additional Mathematics or AS Mathematics and Statistics or **MATH0801** (AL Mathematics not allowed).

Duration: One semester (first semester; repeated in second semester)

Assessment: One 2½-hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

---

### **MATH1101. Linear algebra I (6 credits)**

• Matrices and Systems of Linear Equations: Elementary row operations, row echelon form, over-determined and under-determined systems, matrix algebra, inverses of matrices, partitioned matrices and computational considerations. • Determinant: Properties of determinant, Cramer's rule, applications of determinant and computational considerations. • Vector Spaces: Definition and examples, subspaces, linear independence, span of a set of vectors, basis and dimension, change of basis, row space and column space of matrices. • Linear Transformations: Properties of linear transformations, kernel of linear transformations, matrix representation, basis change and similarity, isomorphisms, linear functionals and dual spaces (optional).

Pre-requisite: AL Pure Mathematics.

Assessment: One 2½ -hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

---

### **MATH1102. Linear algebra II (6 credits)**

• Inner Product Spaces: Inner products in  $\mathbf{R}^n$ , orthogonal subspaces, projection onto subspaces, orthonormal sets and orthonormal bases, self-adjoint operators, Gram-Schmidt orthogonalization process, least squares problems and computational considerations. • Eigenvalues: Eigenvalues, eigenvectors and invariant subspaces, Cayley-Hamilton theorem, systems of linear differential equations and the exponential  $e^{At}$ , diagonalization, hermitian and unitary matrices, normal matrices and the Jordan form. • Positive Definite Matrices: Quadratic forms, positive definite and semi-definite matrices, Cholesky decomposition and applications.

Pre-requisite: AL Pure Mathematics and having taken **MATH1101**.

Assessment: One 2½ -hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

**MATH1201. Calculus I (6 credits)**

• The Real Number System: supremum, infimum, completeness axiom and inequalities. • Functions and Limits: Basic properties. • Continuous Functions: Basic properties, intermediate value theorem and uniformly continuous function. • Differentiation: Differentiable function, basic rules, local extremum, Rolle's theorem, mean value theorem, L'Hospital's rule and Taylor's formula. • Infinite Sequences and Series: Sequence of real numbers, subsequence, series of constant terms, Cauchy's criterion, tests for convergence, absolute convergence, Taylor's and binomial series and power series.

Pre-requisite: AL Pure Mathematics.

Assessment: One 2½ -hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

---

**MATH1202. Calculus II (6 credits)**

• Riemann integrals: Riemann integrability, basic properties, first and second fundamental theorem of calculus, exponential and hyperbolic functions and logarithm. • Differentiability: Partial derivative, differentiability and Taylor's formula. • Maxima and Minima: Local extremum, method of Lagrange multipliers and Jacobian. • Multiple Integrals: Double and triple integrals.

Pre-requisite: AL Pure Mathematics and having taken **MATH1201**.

Assessment: One 2½ -hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

---

**MATH1803. Basic mathematics III (6 credits)**

To provide students with a background of calculus of several variables and linear algebra that can be applied in various disciplines.

Contents:

- Matrices, systems of linear equations, inverses, determinants.
- Functions of several variables; partial differentiation.
- Limits, continuity and differentiability.
- Maxima and minima; Lagrange multipliers.
- Double integrals, triple integrals.
- Vector spaces, basis.
- Linear differential equations, first order, constant coefficients.
- Linear difference equations (with constant coefficients).
- Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors.

Prerequisites: AL Pure Mathematics or **MATH0802**.

Duration: One semester (first semester)

Assessment: One 2½ -hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

---

**MATH1811. Mathematics I (6 credits)**

To provide students with the essential knowledge of linear algebra and vector calculus for further studies in the physical sciences. It is intended that the course will be followed by **MATH1812**.

Contents:

- Vectors and the geometry of  $\mathbf{R}^n$ : points and vectors, addition and scalar multiplication of vectors, vector space structure of  $\mathbf{R}^n$ , inner product and cross product (including their geometric interpretations and applications).

- Matrices and linear transformations: matrices, addition and scalar multiplication of matrices, matrix multiplication, basic concepts of mappings (injective, surjective, bijective mapping, composition of mappings), matrix as a linear transformation, kernels and images (including their relationship with system of linear equations), elementary row transformations, inverse of a matrix, solutions of system of linear equations.
  - Vector calculus (differentiation): derivatives and linear approximation in one dimension, partial differentiation, partial derivatives, gradient and directional derivatives, differentiability, derivative as a linear transformation, Jacobian matrix, chain rule, Taylor polynomials, classifying critical points of functions (local maxima/minima, saddle points), Lagrange multipliers, inverse and implicit function theorems.
  - (Examples on applications in the physical sciences will be integrated into the course content.)
- Prerequisites: AS Mathematics and Statistics, or Mathematics at higher level.  
 Duration: One semester (first semester)  
 Assessment: One 2½-hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).
- 

### **MATH1812. Mathematics II (6 credits)**

To provide students with the essential knowledge of linear algebra and vector calculus for further studies in the physical sciences.

Contents:

- Linear algebra: linear combination, span, linear independence, basis, dimension, determinant, eigenvalue and eigenvector.
- Vector calculus (integration): review on integral in one dimension, Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, curve integrals and potential functions, double and triple integrals (including discussions on polar, cylindrical and spherical coordinates), geometric interpretations of determinants of  $2 \times 2$  and  $3 \times 3$  square matrices, the change of variables formula, surface integrals, divergence and curl of a vector field, Green's Theorem, Stokes' Theorem, Divergence Theorem (or Gauss-Ostrogradsky Theorem).
- (Examples on applications in physical sciences will be integrated into the course content.)

Prerequisites: (AS Mathematics and Statistics, or Mathematics at higher level) and having taken **MATH1811**.

Duration: One semester (second semester)

Assessment: One 2½-hour written examination (60%) together with coursework assessment (40%).

---

### *Second and Third Years*

Students taking Mathematics must include in their choice the courses **Calculus I**, **Calculus II**, **Linear algebra I** and **Linear algebra II**, unless they have already passed them, before considering other courses. Apart from that, they may choose any of the listed courses, for which they satisfy the course pre-requisites. For details of the pre-requisites, please refer to the listing under the Faculty of Science.

### **MATH2001. Development of mathematical ideas (6 credits)**

Selected topics in the development of mathematics from ancient to modern times depending on interest of the students and the lecturer, with attention paid to the evolution of mathematical ideas and the process of mathematical thinking and problem solving.

Pre-requisite: **MATH1101** and **MATH1102** and **MATH1201** and **MATH1202**.

**MATH2301. Algebra I (6 credits)**

Group: Examples of groups, subgroups, coset, Lagrange theorem, quotient group, normal subgroup, group homomorphism, direct product of groups. Ring: Examples of rings, integral domain, ideal, Chinese Remainder theorem. Field of fractions, principal ideal domains, euclidean domains, unique factorization domains. Field: Definition and examples of fields. Polynomials: Polynomial ring in one variable over a field, polynomials over integers, Gauss' lemma.

Pre-requisite: 1. (Two out of **MATH1101**, **MATH1102**, **MATH1201**, **MATH1202**, one of which should be **MATH1202**); or  
2. (**MATH1811/MATH1812** or **MATH1803**).

---

**MATH2401. Analysis I (6 credits)**

The metric topology of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Uniform convergence. Derivative of a function of several variables. Inverse function theorem. Implicit function Theorem. Lagrange multiplier method.

Pre-requisite: 1. (**MATH1201** and **MATH1202**); or  
2. (**MATH1811/MATH1812** or **MATH1803**).

---

**MATH2402. Analysis II (6 credits)**

Lebesgue integral of functions of one variable. Convergence Theorems. Integration of functions of several variables. Fubini's theorem. Change of variables. Fields and forms. Poincaré lemma. Stokes' theorem.

Pre-requisite: 1. (**MATH1201** and **MATH1202**) and (**MATH1101** or **MATH1102**); or  
2. (**MATH1811/MATH1812** or **MATH1803**).

---

**MATH2403. Functions of a complex variable (6 credits)**

Complex number system. Analytic functions and elementary functions. The Cauchy-Riemann equations. Cauchy's theorem and its applications. Taylor's series. Laurent's series. Zeros, singularities and poles. The Residue Theorem and its applications.

Pre-requisite: 1. (Two out of **MATH1101**, **MATH1102**, **MATH1201**, **MATH1202**, one of which should be **MATH1201** or **MATH1202**); or  
2. (**MATH1811/MATH1812** or **MATH1803**).

---

**MATH2405. Differential equations (6 credits)**

Review of elementary differential equations. Existence and uniqueness theorems. Second order differential equations, Wronskian, variation of parameters. Power series method, Legendre polynomials, Bessel functions. The Laplace transform. Linear systems, autonomous systems. Qualitative properties of solutions.

Pre-requisite: 1. (Two out of **MATH1101**, **MATH1102**, **MATH1201**, **MATH1202**, one of which should be **MATH1201** or **MATH1202**); or  
2. (**MATH1811/MATH1812** or **MATH1803**).

---

**MATH3302. Algebra II (6 credits)**

Introduction to module theory. Canonical forms of matrices: Rational canonical form, Jordan canonical form, invariant factor. Presentation of groups: Generators and relations, free group. Polynomial ring in several variables. Fundamental theorem on symmetric polynomials. Fields extension, elements of Galois theory (characteristic zero).

Pre-requisite: **MATH2301**.



**MATH3501. Geometry (6 credits)**

Plane and space curves, regular surfaces in three-dimensional Euclidean space, the Gauss map, intrinsic geometry of surfaces: local and global theory.

Pre-requisite: **MATH1101** and **MATH1102** and **MATH1201** and **MATH1202** and **MATH2401**.

**Examination and Coursework Assessment**

There will be one 2½ hour examination for each course. The final grade for each course will be based on examination performance and coursework assessment in the proportion 60:40, unless stated otherwise in the course description.

**MUSIC****First Year Music Specialists and Intending Majors**

All first year students who intend to major in music must take the **Theory Placement Test** before beginning classes.

First year music specialists and intending majors must take:

I.1	3 credits	The language of music
I.3	6 credits	Analysis of Western art music I
I.4	6 credits	Introduction to musics of the world
I.5	6 credits	Introduction to music in Western culture

and at least one of the following three courses:

I.6	3 credits	Music technology
I.9	3 credits	Ensemble music performance
I.10	3 credits	Cantonese opera workshop

(Note: first year music specialists and intending majors can take either I.9 or I.10, but not both.)

and, if they achieve less than a passing grade in the Theory Placement Test,

I.2	3 credits	Rudiments of music theory
-----	-----------	---------------------------

For first year music specialists and intending majors, the following course is optional:

I.8	3 credits	Orchestral studies and techniques 1
-----	-----------	-------------------------------------

**MUSI1001. I.1 The language of music (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, is an introduction to the main elements of music—melody, rhythm, harmony, texture, timbre and articulation—as they occur in traditional, classical and popular musics of the world.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (40%) and an examination (60%).

**MUSI1009. I.2 Rudiments of music theory (3 credits)**

This course provides students with a technical knowledge of Western art music with a focus on four-part harmony, simple counterpoint, aural training and general musicianship. Part of this knowledge will be acquired through computer-assisted self-study.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (60%) and an examination (40%).

---

**MUSI1010. I.3 Analysis of Western art music I (6 credits)**

This course covers the theory and practice of Western art music from selected style periods. Emphasis is placed on typical harmonic and formal procedures. Primary activities include in-depth analyses of selected works, drills on various harmonic syntaxes, and short exercises in historical styles. Some computer-assisted self-study may be required. Prerequisite: students taking this course must first pass the Theory Placement Test, or have successfully completed Rudiments of Music Theory.

Assessment will be made based on coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI1004. I.4 Introduction to musics of the world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, introduces a range of music from throughout the world including the North America, Southeast Asia, West Africa, the Caribbean, and Europe. Genres such as salsa and zydeco (United States), gamelan gong kebyar (Bali),/ bawa and highlife (Ghana), djembe (Senegal), son and rumba (Cuba), samba (Brazil), flamenco (Spain), and rembetika (Greece) are examined in their social, cultural and historical contexts. The course also discusses issues raised by cross-cultural research. Practical performance in a Department ensemble may be included in the course. Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI1005. I.5 Introduction to music in Western culture (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, focuses on a number of set musical works in order to explore the history of Western art music. The course emphasizes familiarity with a selection of representative musical works through weekly listening assignments. Training in the use of the Music Library is included in the course. Ability to read musical notation will be an advantage.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI1006. I.6 Music technology (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, is a hands-on introduction to the use of music technology including music notation, sequencing, synthesizer techniques, and digital audio. Technical methods of information access, especially in the Music Library, are introduced.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

This course fulfills the Information Technology requirement.

**MUSI1011. I.8      Orchestral studies and techniques 1 (for students in their first year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University's orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or the equivalent on one of the following: flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, percussion, violin, viola, cello or double bass and must pass an audition.

Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

---

**MUSI1012. I.9      Ensemble music performance (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals by the Department's performing ensembles – the Choral Workshop and Gamelan - over two semesters.

Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

---

**MUSI1013. I.10     Cantonese opera workshop (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all, trains students in the singing of arias from Cantonese opera and other aspects of performance. Consisting of a two-hour session every week, the course lasts for two semesters. Students will also learn basic musical features of Cantonese opera and to read its musical notation.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

## **Second Year Music Majors and Specialists**

For second year music majors and specialists, the following courses are compulsory:

II.3	3 credits	University choir 1
II.4	3 credits	University gamelan 1
II/III.1	6 credits	Analysis of Western art music II
II/III.2	6 credits	Analysis of orally transmitted musics
II/III.3	6 credits	Western music history 1
II/III.4	6 credits	Western music history 2
II/III.6	6 credits	Music of China
II/III.18	6 credits	Chinese music history

For second year music majors and specialists, the following courses are optional:

II.1	6 credits	Western music performance 1
II.2	6 credits	Western music performance practice 1
II.5	3 credits	Chinese music performance 1
II.6	3 credits	Orchestral studies and techniques 2
II/III.5	6 credits	Topics in Asian music history
II/III.7	6 credits	Fundamentals of music composition
II/III.8	6 credits	Composing for the concert world
II/III.9	6 credits	Computer and electronic music
II/III.10	6 credits	The business of music
II/III.11	6 credits	Popular music: from Cantopop to techno

II/III.12	6 credits	Music of contemporary Hong Kong
II/III.13	6 credits	Love, sex and death in music of the modern world
II/III.16	6 credits	Special topics in music 1
II/III.17	6 credits	Special topics in music 2
II/III.19	6 credits	Composing for the commercial world
II/III.20	6 credits	American music
II/III.21	6 credits	Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip
II/III.22	6 credits	American film music

Courses designated as II can only be taken in second year; those designated as II/III may be taken in either the second or third year. Courses with prerequisites may only be taken *after* the prerequisites have been filled.

**MUSI2022. II.1 Western music performance 1 (6 credits)**

Students prepare a recital of 30 minutes under the supervision of an instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument (if appropriate), or must use period or advanced twentieth-century techniques. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Western Music Performance 1 is available only to students taking a major in music. Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

**MUSI2023. II.2 Western music performance practice 1 (6 credits)**

This course is concerned with matters concerning performance theory, including historical performance practice and twentieth-century techniques. Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (40%) and an examination (60%).

**MUSI2003. II.3 University choir 1 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*  
This course, which is open to all second-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the Department's University Choir over two semesters. Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

**MUSI2004. II.4 University gamelan 1 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*  
This course, which is open to all second-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the University Gamelan over two semesters. Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

**MUSI2024. II.5 Chinese music performance 1 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*  
Students may choose to enroll in the Cantonese Opera Workshop or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher associated with the Department. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Chinese Music Performance 1 is open only to majors in music. Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

**MUSI2032. II.6                      Orchestral studies and techniques 2 (for students in their second year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University's orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or the equivalent on one of the following: flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, percussion, violin, viola, cello or double bass and must pass an audition. Orchestral Studies and Techniques 1 is not a prerequisite.

Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

---

**MUSI2025. II/III.1                      Analysis of Western art music II (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of Analysis of Western Art Music I. It covers the theory and practice of Western art music from selected style periods. Emphasis is placed on typical harmonic and formal procedures. Primary activities include in-depth analyses of selected works, drills on various harmonic syntaxes, and short exercises in historical styles. Some computer-assisted self-study may be required. Assessment will be based on coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2006. II/III.2 Analysis of orally transmitted musics (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the description, transcription and analysis of music that is essentially orally transmitted. Issues such as 'emic' and 'etic' transcription, prescriptive and descriptive notation, and various methods and theories of analysis will be discussed. Music from a variety of cultures, including musical cultures of Asia, will be used as examples for study. Prerequisite: students must have completed Introduction to Musics of the World before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2007. II/III.3 Western music history 1 (6 credits)**

This course traces the development of European music from its earliest beginnings in ancient Greece and Rome, through the flowering of sacred and secular music in the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, to the integrated instrumental and vocal idioms of the Baroque. The course demands familiarity with a number of representative works composed between ca. 800 AD and 1750. A strong focus is placed on the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created. Prerequisite: students must have completed Introduction to Music in Western Culture before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2008. II/III.4 Western music history 2 (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the Western art music tradition from 1750 to the present, moving through the apparent stylistic perfection of the Classical era to the revolutions and restless variety of the Romantic era, and finally working through the complex experiments of modernist and postmodernist musics. A standard repertoire will be introduced, and the student will be expected to become familiar with the scores, sounds and history of these periods. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created. Prerequisite: students must have completed Western Music History 1 before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

**MUSI2009. II/III.5 Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)**

Selected topics in the history of Asian musical cultures will be examined.  
Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2010. II/III.6 Music of China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course presents the essential features of the music of China, its role in Chinese culture and history, and its position in world music. Subjects will include qin and other musical instruments, theatrical genres such as kunqu, Peking opera and Cantonese opera, narrative songs such as Peking drum song, Suzhou tanci, and Cantonese nanyin, folk songs, and music in Confucian, Buddhist, and Taoist rituals. The course aims not only to introduce students to traditional Chinese music, but also to explore the nature of Chinese culture through its musical practices. Important works of Chinese music will be introduced, as well as issues such as change/stasis, politics/aesthetics, theory/practice, literati/masses, professional/amateur, ritual/entertainment, home-grown/foreign-influenced, and Han/Minority. Previous training in music is not necessary.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (60%) and an examination (40%).

---

**MUSI2026. II/III.7 Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)**

This course seeks to provide an understanding of various musical techniques through writing music. It covers topics in notation, instrumentation, melodic writing, harmonization, timbral control, expansion and refinement of raw material, and structural design. The course comprises lectures, small-group tutorials, individual supervision, composer/performer workshops and concert performances of student works.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2027. II/III.8 Composing for the concert world (6 credits)**

This course encourages students to write music using 20th century techniques. It introduces students to organising and manipulating various musical parameters such as pitch, rhythm, meter, texture, color, form, etc. It also helps students to experiment with the incorporation of extra-musical inspiration and alternative aesthetics. Prerequisite: students must have completed the course Fundamentals of Music Composition before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2013. II/III.9 Computer and electronic music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides students with a general knowledge of acoustics, sampling, sound design, sound editing, sound recording and mixing, audio-visual synchronisation, synthesiser techniques and MIDI sequencing. The course comprises lectures, workshops and individual studio exercises. Students are required to produce various practical, creative projects using the Music Department's studio equipment and computer programs.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

**MUSI2028. II/III.10 The business of music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to topics in the music industry, such as marketing, finance, contract agreements, and copyright problems in the fields of music publishing, recording, performance, music administration and arts management. A music and/or writing background is helpful, but is not necessary.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2015. II/III.11 Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers popular music ranging from the history of Hong Kong's Cantopop (e.g., Sam Hui, Aaron Kwok, Faye Wong) to the latest trends in the popular music market worldwide. The subject matter of this course is how popular music is defined, produced, disseminated and consumed across different cultures of the world. Classes are not arranged chronologically to provide a historical survey, nor are all areas of the world covered. However, themes and concepts that can be applied to the serious study of all popular musics (and perhaps even more) will be discussed. Students will learn the basic critical tools to examine popular musics of the world from a scholarly perspective.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2016. II/III.12 Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to promote an understanding of the various styles of music found in contemporary Hong Kong. Areas to be covered include: commercial music, media and film music, musicals, traditional Chinese music, Western concert music, experimental music and Muzak. This course is open to all students.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2017. II/III.13 Love, sex and death in music of the modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the expression of feelings, situations and stories that focus on passion, romance, sexuality, tragedy, and death in musical works. We shall consider both narrative and technical ways in which these expressions can be conveyed and their resultant power and meaning. The course considers popular and art musics of the twentieth-century, music from the West and from other parts of the world, and music from both stage and concert genres.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2020. II/III.16 Special topics in music 1 (6 credits)****MUSI2021. II/III.17 Special topics in music 2 (6 credits)**

*(These courses are also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The topic of each of these courses reflects the specialist interests of staff members or visitors, and will be announced in advance of each semester course. These courses are available to all students.

Assessment for each course will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

**MUSI2029. II/III.18 Chinese music history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce the history of China through an examination of selective source material including bells from the bronze period, the Book of Music attributed to Confucian philosophy, the earliest known musical notation of a composition from the sixth century A.D., major encyclopaedic compilations of musical sources from the Song dynasty, and Mao Zedong's 'Talk on Literature and Art' in 1942.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2030. II/III.19 Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)**

This course helps students to write music that works for a given practical application such as film scores, theatre music, multimedia performances, radio and television commercials, Web pages, new age music and popular songs. Students are required to work on topics that vary from year to year. Prerequisite: students must have completed the course Fundamentals of Music Composition before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2031. II/III.20 American music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the history, genres, styles, innovations and cultural contexts of music in America. Following an overview of its European and African roots and the development of American music up to World War I, intensive consideration will be given to jazz, rock, blues, musicals, classical and avant-garde musics. This course is available to all students.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2033. II/III.21 Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the study of gamelan music and its cultural context over a two week field trip in Bali. Students will spend one week in intensive workshops at the Sekolah Tinggi Seni Indonesia (STSI), the principal institution for the Indonesian performing arts in Bali, and another week participating in and observing gamelan performance in a traditional Balinese community. The course is open to students who have completed one of the following courses: (i) Ensemble Music Performance (gamelan component), (ii) University Gamelan 1, or (iii) University Gamelan 2. Students will be required to produce a field work report.

Assessment will be based on 100% field report.

---

**MUSI2034. II/III.22 American film music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is about music and sound in American films. In this course, you will learn some basic music terms, how film composers work, what music does in film, and about film audio technology. This course is for almost anyone. There are no prerequisites, i.e., no previous musical knowledge required. However, you should really love films and music. There will be many viewing and listening assignments.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (60%) and an examination (40%).



### Third Year Music Majors and Specialists

For third year music majors and specialists, the following courses are compulsory:

II/III.1	6 credits	Analysis of Western art music II
II/III.2	6 credits	Analysis of orally transmitted musics
II/III.3	6 credits	Western music history 1
II/III.4	6 credits	Western music history 2
II/III.6	6 credits	Music of China
II/III.18	6 credits	Chinese music history
III.7	3 credits	University choir 2

For third year music majors and specialists, the following courses are optional:

II/III.5	6 credits	Topics in Asian music history
II/III.7	6 credits	Fundamentals of music composition
II/III.8	6 credits	Composing for the concert world
II/III.9	6 credits	Computer and electronic music
II/III.10	6 credits	The business of music
II/III.11	6 credits	Popular music: from Cantopop to techno
II/III.12	6 credits	Music of contemporary Hong Kong
II/III.13	6 credits	Love, sex and death in music of the modern world
II/III.16	6 credits	Special topics in music 1
II/III.17	6 credits	Special topics in music 2
II/III.19	6 credits	Composing for the commercial world
II/III.20	6 credits	American music
II/III.21	6 credits	Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip
II/III.22	6 credits	American film music
III.1	6 credits	Western music performance 2
III.2	6 credits	Western music performance practice 2
III.4	6 credits	Seminar 1
III.5	6 credits	Seminar 2
III.8	3 credits	University gamelan 2
III.9	3 credits	Chinese music performance 2
III.10	3 credits	Orchestral studies and techniques 3
III.11	6 credits	Directed study

Courses designated as III can only be taken in third year; those designated as II/III may be taken in either the second or third year. Courses with prerequisites may only be taken *after* the prerequisites have been filled.

#### **MUSI2025. II/III.1 Analysis of Western art music II (6 credits)**

This course is a continuation of Analysis of Western Art Music I. It covers the theory and practice of Western art music from selected style periods. Emphasis is placed on typical harmonic and formal procedures. Primary activities include in-depth analyses of selected works, drills on various harmonic syntaxes, and short exercises in historical styles. Some computer-assisted self-study may be required. Assessment will be based on coursework (100%).

**MUSI2006. II/III.2 Analysis of orally transmitted musics (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the description, transcription and analysis of music that is essentially orally transmitted. Issues such as 'emic' and 'etic' transcription, prescriptive and descriptive notation, and various methods and theories of analysis will be discussed. Music from a variety of cultures, including musical cultures of Asia, will be used as examples for study. Prerequisite: students must have completed Introduction to Musics of the World before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2007. II/III.3 Western music history 1 (6 credits)**

This course traces the development of European music from its earliest beginnings in ancient Greece and Rome, through the flowering of sacred and secular music in the Middle Ages and the Renaissance, to the integrated instrumental and vocal idioms of the Baroque. The course demands familiarity with a number of representative works composed between ca. 800 AD and 1750. A strong focus is placed on the analytical study of scores through listening and reading. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created. Prerequisite: students must have completed Introduction to Music in Western Culture before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2008. II/III.4 Western music history 2 (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the Western art music tradition from 1750 to the present, moving through the apparent stylistic perfection of the Classical era to the revolutions and restless variety of the Romantic era, and finally working through the complex experiments of modernist and postmodernist musics. A standard repertoire will be introduced, and the student will be expected to become familiar with the scores, sounds and history of these periods. In addition, we focus on the ways in which music relates to the other arts and the social contexts in which music was created. Prerequisite: students must have completed Western Music History 1 before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2009. II/III.5 Topics in Asian music history (6 credits)**

Selected topics in the history of Asian musical cultures will be examined.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2010. II/III.6 Music of China (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course presents the essential features of the music of China, its role in Chinese culture and history, and its position in world music. Subjects will include qin and other musical instruments, theatrical genres such as kunqu, Peking opera and Cantonese opera, narrative songs such as Peking drum song, Suzhou tanci, and Cantonese nanyin, folk songs, and music in Confucian, Buddhist, and Taoist rituals. The course aims not only to introduce students to traditional Chinese music, but also to explore the nature of Chinese culture through its musical practices. Important works of Chinese music will be introduced, as well as issues such as change/stasis, politics/aesthetics, theory/practice, literati/masses, professional/amateur, ritual/entertainment, home-grown/foreign-influenced, and Han/Minority. Previous training in music is not necessary.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (60%) and an examination (40%).

**MUSI2026. II/III.7 Fundamentals of music composition (6 credits)**

This course seeks to provide an understanding of various musical techniques through writing music. It covers topics in notation, instrumentation, melodic writing, harmonization, timbral control, expansion and refinement of raw material, and structural design. The course comprises lectures, small-group tutorials, individual supervision, composer/performer workshops and concert performances of student works.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2027. II/III.8 Composing for the concert world (6 credits)**

This course encourages students to write music using 20th century techniques. It introduces students to organizing and manipulating various musical parameters such as pitch, rhythm, meter, texture, color, form, etc. It also helps students to experiment with the incorporation of extra-musical inspiration and alternative aesthetics. Prerequisite: students must have completed the course Fundamentals of Music Composition before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2013. II/III.9 Computer and electronic music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course provides the students with a general knowledge of acoustics, sampling, sound design, sound editing, sampling, sound recording and mixing, audio-visual synchronisation, synthesiser techniques and MIDI sequencing. The course comprises lectures, workshops, and individual studio exercises. Students are required to produce various practical, creative projects using the Music Department's studio equipment and computer programs.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2028. II/III.10 The business of music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces students to topics in the music industry, such as marketing, finance, contract agreements, and copyright problems in the fields of music publishing, recording, performance, music administration and arts management. A music and/or writing background is helpful, but is not necessary.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2015. II/III.11 Popular music: from Cantopop to techno (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers popular music ranging from the history of Hong Kong's Cantopop (e.g., Sam Hui, Aaron Kwok, Faye Wong) to the latest trends in the popular music market worldwide. The subject matter of this course is how popular music is defined, produced, disseminated and consumed across different cultures of the world. Classes are not arranged chronologically to provide a historical survey, nor are all areas of the world covered. However, themes and concepts that can be applied to the serious study of all popular musics (and perhaps even more) will be discussed. Students will learn the basic critical tools to examine popular musics of the world from a scholarly perspective.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

**MUSI2016. II/III.12 Music of contemporary Hong Kong (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course aims to promote an understanding of the various styles of music found in contemporary Hong Kong. Areas to be covered include: commercial music, media and film music, musicals, traditional Chinese music, Western concert music, experimental music and Muzak. This course is open to all students.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2017. II/III.13 Love, sex and death in music of the modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course examines the expression of feelings, situations and stories that focus on passion, romance, sexuality, tragedy, and death in musical works. We shall consider both narrative and technical ways in which these expressions can be conveyed, and their resultant power and meaning. This course considers popular and art musics of the twentieth-century, music from the West and from other parts of the world; and music from both stage and concert genres.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2020. II/III.16 Special topics in music 1 (6 credits)****MUSI2021. II/III.17 Special topics in music 2 (6 credits)**

*(These courses are also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The topic of each of these courses reflects the specialist interests of staff members or visitors, and will be announced in advance of each semester course. These courses are available to all students.

Assessment for each course will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2029. II/III.18 Chinese music history (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will introduce the history of China through an examination of selective source material including bells from the bronze period, the Book of Music attributed to Confucian philosophy, the earliest known musical notation of a composition from the sixth century A.D., major encyclopaedic compilations of musical sources from the Song dynasty, and Mao Zedong's 'Talk on Literature and Art' in 1942.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI2030. II/III.19 Composing for the commercial world (6 credits)**

This course helps students to write music that works for a given practical application such as film scores, theatre music, multimedia performances, radio and television commercials, Web pages, new age music and popular songs. Students are required to work on topics that vary from year to year. Prerequisite: students must have completed the course Fundamentals of Music Composition before undertaking this course.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

**MUSI2031. II/III.20 American music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will examine the history, genres, styles, innovations and cultural contexts of music in America. Following an overview of its European and African roots and the development of American music up to World War I, intensive consideration will be given to jazz, rock, blues, musicals, classical and avant-garde musics. This course is available to all students.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**MUSI2033. II/III.21 Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course focuses on the study of gamelan music and its cultural context over a two week field trip in Bali. Students will spend one week in intensive workshops at the Sekolah Tinggi Seni Indonesia (STSI), the principal institution for the Indonesian performing arts in Bali, and another week participating in and observing gamelan performance in a traditional Balinese community. The course is open to students who have completed one of the following courses: (i) Ensemble Music Performance (gamelan component), (ii) University Gamelan 1, or (iii) University Gamelan 2. Students will be required to produce a field work report.

Assessment will be based on 100% field report.

---

**MUSI2034. II/III.22 American film music (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is about music and sound in American films. In this course, you will learn some basic music terms, how film composers work, what music does in film, and about film audio technology. This course is for almost anyone. There are no prerequisites, i.e., no previous musical knowledge required. However, you should really love films and music. There will be many viewing and listening assignments.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (60%) and an examination (40%).

---

**MUSI3009. III.1 Western music performance 2 (6 credits)**

Students prepare a recital of 40 minutes under the supervision of an instrumental teacher approved by the Department. At least one piece must be performed on a period instrument (if appropriate), or must use period or advanced twentieth-century techniques. Places in this course are limited and admission is by audition. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Western Music Performance 2 is available only to students taking a major in music.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

---

**MUSI3010. III.2 Western music performance practice 2 (6 credits)**

This course is concerned with matters concerning performance theory, including historical performance practice and twentieth century techniques, at a more advanced level than Western Music Performance Practice 1.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

<b>MUSI3004.</b>	<b>III.4</b>	<b>Seminar 1 (6 credits)</b>
<b>MUSI3005.</b>	<b>III.5</b>	<b>Seminar 2 (6 credits)</b>

The topic of each seminar reflects the specialist interests of staff members or visitors, and will be announced in advance of each semester course. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, this course is available only to students taking a major in music.

Assessment for each seminar will be on the basis of coursework (60%) and an examination (40%).

**MUSI3007.     III.7                    University choir 2 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all third-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the Department's University Choir over two semesters.

Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

**MUSI3008.     III.8                    University gamelan 2 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course, which is open to all third-year students, focuses on musical performance. Students participate in weekly rehearsals with the University Gamelan over two semesters.

Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

**MUSI3011.     III.9                    Chinese music performance 2 (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students may choose to enroll in the Cantonese Opera Workshop or take individual instrumental instruction with a teacher associated with the Department. Beginners are welcome, but places in this course are limited, especially for individual instrumental instruction. Except with the permission of the Head of Department, Chinese Music Performance 2 is open only to majors in music.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (100%).

**MUSI3012.     III.10                    Orchestral studies and techniques 3 (for students in their third year of study) (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Students participate in weekly rehearsals and performances with the University's orchestra over two semesters. Besides musical skills, this course focuses on teamwork, discipline and creativity. To gain admission to the course, students must have reached the standard of ABRSM Grade 6 or the equivalent on one of the following: flute, oboe, clarinet, bassoon, horn, trumpet, trombone, tuba, percussion, violin, viola, cello or double bass and must pass an audition. Orchestral Studies and Techniques 1 and 2 are not prerequisites.

Assessment will be based on participation and a practical examination.

**MUSI3013.     III.11                    Directed study (6 credits)**

This is a one-to-one course in which the student works with a supervisor throughout the year. During the first semester, the supervisor introduces theories and techniques of musical research through reading, discussion, and book reports. Towards the end of the semester, a research topic is to be decided upon between the student and supervisor. The second semester is devoted to the research on the topic and the writing of a thesis under the guidance of the supervisor. Entry to this course is on the basis of grades obtained in second year and is at the discretion of the Head of Department.

Assessment will be based on the thesis submitted.

## Non-Music Majors

Non-music majors may choose from the following courses:

I.1	3 credits	The language of music
I.4	6 credits	Introduction to musics of the world
I.5	6 credits	Introduction to music in Western culture
I.6	3 credits	Music technology
I.8	3 credits	Orchestral studies and techniques 1
I.9	3 credits	Ensemble music performance
I.10	3 credits	Cantonese opera workshop
II.3	3 credits	University choir 1
II.4	3 credits	University gamelan 1
II.5	3 credits	Chinese music performance 1
II.6	3 credits	Orchestral studies and techniques 2
II/III.6	6 credits	Music of China
II/III.9	6 credits	Computer and electronic music
II/III.10	6 credits	The business of music
II/III.11	6 credits	Popular music: from Cantopop to techno
II/III.12	6 credits	Music of contemporary Hong Kong
II/III.13	6 credits	Love, sex and death in music of the modern world
II/III.14	3 credits	Understanding music
II/III.15	3 credits	Music in society
II/III.16	6 credits	Special topics in music 1
II/III.17	6 credits	Special topics in music 2
II/III.18	6 credits	Chinese music history
II/III.20	6 credits	American music
II/III.21	6 credits	Music and culture in Bali: an overseas fieldtrip
II/III.22	6 credits	American film music
III.7	3 credits	University choir 2
III.8	3 credits	University gamelan 2
III.9	3 credits	Chinese music performance 2
III.10	3 credits	Orchestral studies and techniques 3

All of the above may also count as Inter-Faculty Broadening Courses, if allowed by the student's home faculty or department.

Non-music majors may also choose any course or combination of courses with the approval of the Head of Department.

### **MUSI2018. II/III.14 Understanding music (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is open only to non-majors, and is designed for students with little or no background who wish to learn of music's beauties, ideas, and meanings. Music can be seen both as formal ideas in abstract arrangements, and as rapturous emotion rising from the heart. This course will explore both aspects by introducing musical works from many cultures, ranging from the grandeur of a Beethoven symphony to the subtleties of the Chinese zither.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

**MUSI2019. II/III.15 Music in society (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is open only to non-majors, and is designed for students with little or no background who are interested in music as a social activity. Discussion of music in tribal cultures, popular music and its cultural meanings, political musics, and social patterns of performance, consumption and communication are explored.

Assessment will be on the basis of coursework (50%) and an examination (50%).

---

**PHILOSOPHY**

Studying philosophy is a training in thinking - critically, creatively and independently. It is one of the best preparations for professional work. Our graduates hold important positions in public life, in the commercial field, in education, and in many other areas.

Our syllabus enables you to take a small amount of philosophy (in any year of study without prerequisites), to major in philosophy (or in the *Linguistics and Philosophy*, or the *Politics and Philosophy* programmes), or to take a double-major, combining philosophy equally with another Arts or Social Sciences discipline.

Courses are offered in the form of lectures, seminars and tutorials. Particular importance is attached to tutorial work.

What should be distinctive and important in a university education is developing the ability in students to take responsibility for their own work: our syllabus and our approach to teaching is guided by this principle.

Our department is also known, world-wide, for the pioneering role it has had over the last two decades in exploiting some advantages of information technology as a new instrument in learning. Of course, I.T. is not a substitute for thought or more traditional forms of learning. But, properly used, it facilitates our work, as well as helping to develop skills which can be useful more generally.

Our courses are divided into three levels and four groups. The three levels correspond to the three years of study for an undergraduate degree. But it is open to students in any Faculty to take, for instance, a first level philosophy course in any year of study (provided that the regulations of their own degree programme permit it). The four groups are of courses related by subject-matter. The four first-level courses correspond roughly to these groups.

**FIRST LEVEL**

The Department offers four general introductory courses in philosophy and two introductory courses in logic. There are no prerequisites. All these courses will normally be offered every year.

**PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Human beings have always attempted to understand and control the world they live in by asking questions, and seeking effective answers, about that world. These attempts have taken many forms, but philosophy has always been a central part of this process of explanation and the progress of knowledge. The questions of what we can know, how we can know, and how we can use what we know, are prime examples of philosophical questions that have come down to us in a long history of inquiry – philosophy is a part of the natural and practical curiosity of mankind.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).



Students may opt to be assessed on their use of information technology in this course, in order to fulfil the IT requirement specified in Regulation UG3, unless they fulfil this requirement elsewhere. Those taking this option will undertake some extra work in IT and will earn an additional 3 credits, listed on the transcript under **PHIL1007. Using information technology in Philosophy** (though this is not a separate course). The mode of assessment for this component will be 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is an introduction to philosophical issues about the mind. These include metaphysical questions about what minds are, whether the mind is something non-physical or whether it is some kind of a computer. Then there are the epistemological questions about the limitation of human knowledge, such as whether we can really know what other people's experiences are like, or whether there is a God. Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL1003. Ethics and politics: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

One of the founders of Western philosophy, Socrates, claimed that the most important philosophical question is "How is one to live?" How are we to live in our relations with others as individuals (ethics)? And how are we to live together as communities and societies (politics)? This course will introduce some of the ways that key philosophers in the Western tradition have answered these questions. Reading texts by Plato and Aristotle in ancient Greece, and modern and contemporary writings by Rousseau, Kant, Mill, Rawls and contemporary feminists, we will explore questions about the way we relate to other people.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL1004. Chinese and western thought: an introduction to philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to first year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The course compares central themes in the philosophical dialogues of the Chinese and Western traditions. Topics may include Confucian intuition, Daoist paradox, Greek rationalism, British Empiricism, Existentialism, Pragmatism, Maoism, Zen Buddhism, and positivism.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

Students may opt to be assessed on their use of information technology in this course, in order to fulfil the IT requirement specified in Regulation UG3, unless they fulfil this requirement elsewhere. Those taking this option will undertake some extra work in IT and will earn an additional 3 credits, listed on the transcript under **PHIL1007. Using information technology in Philosophy** (though this is not a separate course). The mode of assessment for this component will be 100% coursework.

---

**PHIL1005. Critical thinking and logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Critical thinking is a matter of thinking clearly and rationally. It is important for solving problems, effective planning, and expressing ideas clearly and systematically. We shall study the basic principles of critical thinking, and see how they can be applied in everyday life.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final exam.

**PHIL1006. Elementary logic (3 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Formal logic uses special symbolic notations to study reasoning and arguments systematically. This is a web-based self-study course on basic formal logic, in particular, sentential logic. Although there are no lectures, there are optional tutorial sessions for students to ask questions. Registered students should visit the philosophy department at the beginning of the semester to obtain a course handout.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% final exam.

Not available to students who have taken **PHIL2510. Logic**.

---

**SECOND AND THIRD LEVELS**

Students wishing to take the courses listed below should normally have taken at least one first-level course, except where otherwise indicated, or with prior approval. Apart from **PHIL3810. Senior seminar** and **PHIL3910. Senior thesis**, they are all second or third level courses. Some of these courses are also available to students of other faculties as 'broadening courses'.

Most of these courses consist of 18 lectures in one semester, together with tutorials. Details of tutorial and other arrangements are published each year in the department's booklet, *Choices in Philosophy*.

All these courses but two are listed under four groups:

**Knowledge and reality**  
**Mind and language**  
**Moral and political philosophy**  
**History of philosophy.**

Of the second and third level courses listed, twelve to sixteen will normally be offered each year. This means that not every course will be available in any two-year period. Therefore, **student preferences will play a part in determining which courses are offered**. Some courses, however, are likely to be offered every year (because of our commitments to curricula outside the B.A., and for other reasons), and some we prefer to give at least once every two years to make sure that every student has an opportunity to take them. Details of this are indicated below.

Students who major in philosophy must take at least eight courses in philosophy, and are recommended to take at least one course from each of these categories. Third year majors are recommended to take the **Senior seminar** in their final year, especially if they are considering further study in philosophy, provided that their second year grades reach a good level. Students may also take a double major, combining philosophy equally with another Arts or Social Science discipline. (BA students taking a double major with a Social Science discipline must conform to the requirements determined by the Faculty of Social Sciences for majors in a Social Science discipline).

---

**Group I: Knowledge and Reality****PHIL2110. Knowledge (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Theory of knowledge deals with the nature and possibility of knowledge and its limits. We shall address questions that include: Is Scepticism possible? Are some kinds of knowledge more basic than others? Are our views of the world really true or just elaborate stories that serve our purposes? Can philosophers learn about knowledge from psychology and physiology? What could philosophers add to their stories? Is there one concept of justification (reason) or many (social and cultural differences)? Is truth an important goal of knowledge?

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

**PHIL2210. Metaphysics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers both the nature of reality and the nature of knowledge of it and treats the two questions as intrinsically connected. We shall examine a number of important theories of metaphysics, as well as anti-metaphysics, including those of Plato, Descartes, Hume, Kant, Nietzsche, Heidegger, and contemporary philosophers such as Habermas, Rorty and Putnam. We will treat these theories not only as representing different views on metaphysics but also as forming a logical order of development. Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2420. Chinese philosophy: metaphysics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We study Chinese views of reality, human nature, language, wisdom and the relation of each to human society. Our main texts will be Daoist texts from the classical period, but we shall also discuss Neo-Daoism, Buddhism and Neo-Confucian metaphysics.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2150. Philosophy and biology (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Charles Darwin's theory of evolution had a huge impact on the way we think about mankind's place in the world. In this course we will discuss some of the philosophical consequences of this impact. No previous knowledge of the theory is required as we will begin with a critical introduction to its development and main features. Later in the course we will also consider the contemporary debate concerning the scope and limits of evolutionary theory.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2130. Philosophy of the sciences (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

If we want to find out about the world around us, we look to science to provide the answers to our questions. But why? What justifies our faith in this enterprise? In this course, we shall investigate two related questions. First, what is scientific method? We shall examine answers ranging from the rigid prescriptions of Popper to the anarchism of Feyerabend. Second, what reason do we have to think that the explanations provided by science are true? Here the answers range from optimism based on the success of science, to pessimism based on our repeated rejection of past theories. Along the way, we shall critically consider notions such as progress, objectivity, and the difference between science and non-science. We shall examine how philosophical questions arise in actual scientific practice. What examples are selected for this purpose will, to some extent, be determined by the interests of students.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

There are no prerequisites for this course.

**PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

How should we understand and explain human life and activities? This course will examine different models of explanation in the social sciences, and will proceed by case studies. Which cases are taken will depend on the interests and knowledge of those who enrol for the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

There are no prerequisites for this course.

---

**Group II: Mind and Language****PHIL2220. The mind (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on some central issues in the philosophy of mind, issues which arise when we think of the relations between mind and the world. Among the issues to be discussed in the course are the following: What does having a mind enable us to do? Do non-human animals have minds? What is the relationship between mind and rationality?

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2510. Logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This is an introductory course on basic formal logic. We shall study basic logical concepts, as well as formal systems of logic including sentential and predicate logic. We shall learn how logical notations can be used to identify logical truths, and to formalize and evaluate arguments. If we have time we might discuss more advanced topics such as the connection between computation and logic, and Gödel's Theorems.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

The prerequisite for this course is **PHIL1006. Elementary logic**.

---

**PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

When thinking about inference, a number of concepts come to our attention, such as *truth*, *logical constants*, *propositions*, *necessity*, *consequence*, *logical form*. Various questions with which the course deals include: 'What is the relation of Logic to reasoning?'; 'What does the existence of paradoxes tell us about our accepted logical principles?'; 'What is the best way to represent arguments in ordinary language if we wish to study the validity of such arguments?'; 'Are there types of discourse which are by nature fuzzy, demanding a fuzzy logic for their representation?'; 'Must logic fit empirical facts, or is it a 'pure' discipline?'

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

The prerequisite for this course is **PHIL1006. Elementary logic**.

**PHIL2610.     Philosophy of language (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

What is a language, and what is involved in knowing or understanding a language? In this course we will see how philosophers and linguists answer such questions as the following: What can logic tell us about the grammar of natural languages? Are human beings born with a universal grammar? What makes a word meaningful? What is the difference between what we mean and what we convey when we say something? How does a metaphor work? Can we learn something from slips of the tongue about the nature of language?

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2230.     Philosophy and cognitive science (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall look at some of the philosophical issues involved in studying minds and behaviour scientifically. We might discuss questions such as: Can we explain all mental phenomena in computational terms? What is consciousness? What is the role of language in thinking? How useful are neural networks in understanding the mind?

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**This is a second or third level course, which also forms part of the BCogSc programme. It is normally offered every year.**

---

**PHIL2460.     Philosophical Chinese (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course, we shall learn to analyse grammatically and semantically the language used in the classical texts of Chinese philosophy. The analysis will help us construct arguments in favour of or against various interpretations and translations. We briefly discuss texts from the *Analects* of Confucius, the *Mozzi*, the *Zhuangzi* and then do a detailed analysis of the *Daode Jing*.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2070.     Pragmatism (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course is in two unequal parts. In the first and longer part, we shall study the writings of the classical pragmatists: Peirce, Dewey and James; in the second, we shall look more briefly at some of the so-called 'neo-pragmatists' such as Quine, Davidson and Putnam. We shall then consider the question of the relationship between these two schools, and think seriously about the recent suggestion that the earlier is in fact the better.

Topics to be discussed include: truth and knowledge; religion and science; and rationality, personality and aesthetics.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

**PHIL2511. Paradoxes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Paradoxes are arguments which proceed from highly plausible assumptions, through highly plausible and usually simple steps to highly implausible conclusions. Some examples: Zeno's paradoxes of motion, Kant's antinomies, the Liar and the paradox of the surprise examination. What such paradoxes show is that there is something deeply wrong with some of our most fundamental ways of thinking. We shall attempt to find solutions to certain of these paradoxes.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

The prerequisite for this course is **PHIL1006. Elementary logic**.

---

**Group III: Moral and Political Philosophy****PHIL2310. Theories of morality (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course covers some of the main highlights of 20th century moral philosophy, with passing attention to some of the earlier, historical background as needed. Questions covered include: Is morality relative or absolute? Can a moral practice be right in one culture but wrong in another? Is morality basically a form of personal or social opinion, or is there any way it can be made objective or even scientific? If morality is not science, is there any rational way of resolving moral disputes? Perspectives considered include religious and nature-based theories, performative theories, rational intuitionism, utilitarianism and modern theories of justice.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2340. Moral problems (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Many practical problems give rise to moral controversies. Among the questions to be considered in this course are 'Should one person treat all others equally?'; 'Is abortion a type of killing, and is it acceptable?'; 'Should certain types of pornography be banned?'; 'Does love require fidelity?'; 'Can capital punishment be justified?'; 'Is it right to take affirmative action in favour of groups who have been discriminated against in the past?'; 'Should old people be helped to die, if that is what they wish?'. These are all 'large-scale' questions, but we shall also be discussing less grand, but no less important moral dilemmas that we each confront from time to time.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: ethics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

An introduction to comparative moral philosophy, with readings drawn from the classical Chinese tradition as well as from modern, analytical sources. Figures likely to be taken up include Confucius, Mencius, Mo Tzu and Han Fei Tzu. Attention will be given to the historical development of Chinese moral thinking through these key representatives. Questions to be taken up include the question of whether traditional Chinese thought can have relevance to us in the modern world, and how our beliefs about our nature may shape our beliefs about what is moral or immoral.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

**PHIL2360. Political philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course addresses fundamental questions in political philosophy concerning the nature of power and freedom; and the complex relations between the two – at both a philosophical and a political level. It will cover three major paradigms in modern political philosophy: the Marxist (and Critical Theory) approach; the Liberal (and pluralist democratic) approach; and the contribution of contemporary French philosopher, Michel Foucault, to a theory of power and subjectivity.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

There is no prerequisite for this course.

---

**PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The world has changed a great deal since the time of Marx. But Marxism, duly updated and refined, still has a lot to teach us about the nature of human society and historical change, the capitalist organization of society, the foundation and limits of liberal democracy, the constitution of power and the political. These and other issues raised by Marxism are, or ought to be, among the central concerns of political philosophy or philosophy of history. We will examine how Marxism, especially contemporary Marxism, can serve as a useful critique of liberal political philosophy and liberal political institutions. We will also discuss how Marxism itself needs to be transformed or reconceived in order to create an appealing democratic vision of genuine contemporary relevance.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2350. Philosophy of law (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

We shall set the scene by contrasting classical Western and Chinese views of law. Then we shall focus on what moral and political presuppositions are required to justify the rule of law. This will guide our view of how one ought to reason in interpreting the law, and finally see what the implications of theory of law are for our views of punishment, rights, justice, equality, responsibility, insanity, and negligence. This course should help you evaluate the arguments for the importance of the rule of law in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2370. Aesthetics (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Philosophical aesthetics is the study of philosophical issues which arise when we consider the nature of aesthetic appreciation and judgement. These are some of the questions which will be discussed in the course: Is beauty merely 'in the eye of the beholder'? What differences might there be between aesthetic appreciation of art and aesthetic appreciation of nature? What is 'representational art'? (Are film and photography representational art forms?) Do artworks 'express emotion'? (If so, *how* can they do this?) Can censorship of artworks be justified? What is wrong with artistic fakes and forgeries?

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

**PHIL2380. Philosophy and literature (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces two ways of studying philosophy and literature in relation to each other. On the one hand, we shall try to illuminate a range of philosophical, particularly ethical, problems through a close reading of literary texts (which may include the work of Dostoevsky, Henry James, Lu Xun, and James Joyce). On the other hand, we shall bring the analytical resources of philosophy to bear on questions of literary theory and interpretation (for example, the role of the reader, the position of the writer and the ethics of reading). Both philosophical essays and literary works will be used in the course.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2383. Modernity and postmodernity (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will focus on responses to one of the key questions that is posed by twentieth century European philosophy: that is, what is the nature of this modernity in which we live? According to Marx, the experience of modernity is one in which 'all that is solid melts into air'; while according to some contemporary philosophers this is precisely the experience of *post*-modernity. In this course, we will examine the responses of key 20th century philosophers to the question of modernity and postmodernity (these may include, Benjamin, Adorno & Horkheimer, Habermas, Foucault, Lyotard and Bauman). Particular attention will be paid to the way this questioning has led to a reconceptualisation of ethics and politics in contemporary societies.

---

**PHIL2480. Confucianism and the modern world (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course introduces some of the central ideas of Confucianism, particularly as they have been developed by Neo-Confucian thinkers, and considers the contemporary meaning and relevance of these ideas for societies with a Confucian tradition. The thematic focus of the course is on whether and how (Neo-)Confucianism promotes or hinders economic, political and cultural modernization. We shall also discuss how (Neo-)Confucianism interacts with Western ideas, and (in the case of the PRC) Marxism in the process of social transformation.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2390. Philosophy of religion (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Topics discussed will include: the nature of religious experience, the existence of God, life after death, religion and morality, religion and reason.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

There is no prerequisite for this course.



## **Group IV: History of Philosophy**

### **PHIL2001. The beginnings of philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to include important early thinkers like Plato and Aristotle in the West, and/or Confucius and Lao Tze in China. Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet '*Choices in Philosophy*'.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

### **PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to cover various important thinkers from Descartes to Kant, including the Eighteenth Century Empiricists. Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet '*Choices in Philosophy*'.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

### **PHIL2440. Confucius (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will look at modern interpretations of traditional Confucianism, primarily from the perspective of modern analytical philosophy, but with some attention also to the sociological literature, and to modern applications of Confucianism, for example in Singapore.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

### **PHIL2010. Plato (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will address Plato's views on morality, the mind, knowledge and reality.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

### **PHIL2011. Aristotle (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The ancient Greek philosopher Aristotle researched virtually every aspect of human knowledge available at the time, producing a body of work that influences philosophy and many other fields down to the present. This course will look at some of his writings in the physical sciences and in human affairs, examining the interconnection among these areas of inquiry.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

There is no prerequisite for this course.

**PHIL2442. Mencius (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Mencius, the most influential of Confucian philosophers, presents interesting challenges to interpretation. Does his philosophy provide a basis for a Chinese theory of human rights? Is his conception of human nature defensible today? Which tradition of interpretation (mind or principle) gives the most plausible interpretation? We shall discuss these questions while looking at some modern scholarly interpretations of Mencius in his ancient context.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2450. Zhuangzi (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

In this course we shall explore different lines of interpretation of Zhuangzi's Daoist philosophy. Students will participate in defending either relativist, sceptical or mystical readings of key passages. We shall start our analysis with the historical context and some textual theory. Then we shall discuss several chapters in some detail, including the historical account of the development of Daoism in 'Tianxia', the relativism in 'Autumn Floods' and 'Free and Easy Wandering', and finally the analytic scepticism and pluralism of the 'Essay on Making Things Equal'.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2020. Descartes (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The standard accounts of Descartes' philosophy have tended to focus on his late metaphysics and epistemology, but this course is intended as an introduction to many more of the interesting aspects of Descartes' thought. We shall, of course, discuss some of the standard issues in their rightful place (and discuss what that place might be), but we shall also consider Descartes' contributions to, and philosophical thoughts about, e.g. physics, mathematics, and medicine. (*N.B.* No specialist knowledge of these areas is required). The reading will be a combination of Descartes' primary texts (recently published in a very clear translation) and contemporary secondary material.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2025. Hume (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

This course will be concerned with reading Hume's *Enquiry Concerning Human Understanding*. The main focus of the course will be to understand the features and consequences of Hume's new naturalistic approach to philosophical issues.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2030. Kant's critical philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Two aspects of Kant's philosophy will be examined: first, topics in his theoretical philosophy such as objective knowledge, transcendental idealism and the thing-in-itself; second, topics in his practical philosophy such as moral duty, free will and rationality. Attempts will also be made to unify these two aspects of Kant's philosophy.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

**PHIL2035.     Philosophy of the Enlightenment (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to cover several important eighteenth-century thinkers including, but not limited to, Mandeville, Voltaire, Diderot, D'Alembert, La Mettrie, Rousseau and Kant. Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet 'Choices in Philosophy'.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2040.     Nietzsche (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Nietzsche occupies a special place in Western thought, both as a wholesale critic of the philosophical tradition that went before him (e.g. Socrates, Kant), and as a precursor of certain philosophical trends that are important today (e.g. Foucault, Derrida). This course offers an overview of Nietzsche's philosophy (including the will to power, perspectivism, nihilism, eternal return) and discusses Nietzsche's influence on contemporary thought.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2060.     Wittgenstein (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

Wittgenstein said that his aim in philosophy was 'to show the fly the way out of the fly bottle'. By this he meant that certain preconceptions, oversimplifications and poor analogies had led philosophers to construct misguided theories about such things as sensation, meaning, understanding and the nature of language, and that it was his task not to construct alternative theories but to point out the ways in which the theorists (including his earlier self) had become entrapped. This programme may appear modest, but Wittgenstein's approach has had far-reaching consequences and his work has received more discussion than that of any other twentieth century philosopher and has influenced philosophy and many other disciplines.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

**PHIL2077.     Habermas (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The important German philosopher Habermas, combining strengths of the Continental and Anglo-American philosophical traditions, has developed a highly influential theory on a wide range of moral, political and historical issues. This course is designed to provide a general introduction to Habermas's interdisciplinary, comprehensive, and politically engaged way of doing philosophy. Topics covered include discourse ethics, the public sphere, social action and rationality, technology and science as ideology, the nature of modernity, and legitimization problems in late capitalism.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

**PHIL2085. Contemporary European philosophy (6 credits)**

*(This course is also offered to second and third year non-BA students for inter-Faculty broadening purposes.)*

The contents of this course will vary from year to year, but it is likely to cover various important twentieth century thinkers (these may include Husserl, Heidegger, Sartre, Foucault, Derrida) and/or major movements in twentieth century European thought (such as phenomenology, existentialism, structuralism and poststructuralism). Details will be announced in good time in the departmental booklet '*Choices in Philosophy*'.

Assessment: 100% coursework (may include in-class test).

---

*Courses of unspecified category***PHIL2700. Special topic (6 credits)**

**The level of courses offered under this heading will be announced in the departmental Booklet *Choices in Philosophy*.**

---

**PHIL3810. Senior seminar (6 credits)**

This course will focus each year on a different key philosophical text. Presentations will be made by students and discussed according to a schedule worked out in advance between students and the course co-ordinator. Selected third-year students will be included. An MPhil candidate who took this course as an undergraduate will be deemed to have completed this graduate requirement.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**This is a third-level course, and is normally offered every year. Permission to attend it will be given to those students with good second year grades.**

---

**PHIL3910. Senior thesis (12 credits)**

A thesis may be prepared under supervision for submission not later than March 31 of the final year. Notice of intention to offer a thesis must be given before June 15 of the second year, and this intention will be confirmed or modified on the supervisor's advice by the end of the first week of the first semester of the final year, after the candidate has had the opportunity to do and submit preliminary work over the summer vacation. Only students majoring in philosophy may offer a thesis.

---

**ASSESSMENT**

In the case of the **Senior thesis**, assessment will be based entirely on the completed thesis.

In those courses where students are required, or may opt, to be examined by dissertation, assessment will be based on their dissertation, and also, in some cases, on tutorial work preparatory to the writing of their dissertation. The completed dissertation will count for at least 75% of the final assessment. (Details will be given in the departmental booklet '*Choices in Philosophy*'.)

---

**Programme in Linguistics and Philosophy**

The Department of Philosophy in collaboration with the Department of Linguistics offers a major in Linguistics and Philosophy:

**First year:**

- (a) Linguistics: LING1001. Introduction to linguistics
  - (b) Philosophy: PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1003. Ethics and politics: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1004. Chinese and western thought: an introduction to philosophy
- 

**Second and third years (eight courses):**

- (c) Linguistics:  
  
LING2003. Semantics: meaning and grammar  
LING2027. Phonology: An introduction to the study of sound systems  
LING2028. Syntactic description  
LING2032. Syntactic theory
- (d) Philosophy:  
  
*PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science*  
PHIL2610. Philosophy of language  
  
and any two of:  
PHIL2060. Wittgenstein  
PHIL2220. The mind  
PHIL2380. Philosophy and Literature  
PHIL2460. Philosophical Chinese  
PHIL2510. Logic  
PHIL2511. Paradoxes  
PHIL2520. Philosophy of logic

The remaining eight courses in a student's second/third year programme may be selected from those offered by any department, as permitted by the regulations.

It should be noted that not all courses are offered in both departments every year. Choices are subject to approval by the head of the department.

---

**Programme in Politics and Philosophy**

The Department of Philosophy in collaboration with the Department of Politics and Public Administration offers a major in Politics and Philosophy for students in the second and third years.

This programme is open to all Arts and Social Sciences students who have completed the following first-year courses:

- (a) POLI1002. Fundamentals of public administration  
or  
POLI1003. Making sense of politics, **and**

- (b) PHIL1001. Knowledge of the world: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1002. The human mind: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1003. Ethics and politics: an introduction to philosophy  
or  
PHIL1004. Chinese and western thought: an introduction to philosophy

The number of places on this programme will be limited to thirty.

### **Programme structure**

(a) **Compulsory courses**

The programme comprises **eight** mandatory courses as follows:

- (i) **Politics and Public Administration:** 4 courses from
- POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice
  - POLI0010. Democracy and its critics
  - POLI0029. Political theory
  - POLI0051. Issues in Chinese political philosophy
- (ii) **Philosophy:** 4 courses  
one of:
- PHIL2001. The beginnings of philosophy
  - PHIL2002. Early modern philosophy
  - PHIL2383. Modernity and Postmodernity
- one of:
- PHIL2080. Marxist philosophy
  - PHIL2350. Philosophy of law
  - PHIL2360. Political philosophy
- one of:
- PHIL2310. Theories of morality
  - PHIL2340. Moral problems
  - PHIL2430. Chinese philosophy: ethics

and another course in philosophy not listed above.

(b) **Elective courses**

Candidates may choose the remaining eight courses in any department, subject to Faculty regulations. In the interest of providing a coherent programme, however, candidates are strongly advised to select at least four electives from the following courses offered by the Department of Politics and Public Administration and the Department of Philosophy.

**Politics and Public Administration**

- POLI0006. China and Hong Kong: the politics of transition
- POLI0020. Hong Kong politics
- POLI0021. Understanding global issues
- POLI0022. Governing China

**Philosophy**

- PHIL2140. Philosophy of social science
- PHIL2210. Metaphysics
- PHIL2230. Philosophy and cognitive science
- PHIL2390. Philosophy of religion

## PHYSICS

Second/Third Year

The Department of Physics offers the following courses:-

**PHYS0001. Nature of the Universe I: Introduction to observational astronomy and the solar system (3 credits)**

This general education course is designed as an elective for students in all disciplines and all years. No prior knowledge in astronomy, physics, and higher mathematics is required.

The course focuses on the observational aspect of astronomy (including constellations and planets) and the physics of our solar system. It also provides students with a basic understanding of the relationship of astronomy to life. Students are expected to participate actively in the night sky observations and field trips.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: One 1-hour written examination (50% weighting) together with course work, field trips, laboratory work, and night sky observations (50% weighting).

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**PHYS0002. Nature of the Universe II: Stars, galaxies and cosmology for beginners (3 credits)**

This general education course is designed as an elective for students in all disciplines and all years. It focuses on the theoretical aspect of astronomy. No prior knowledge in astronomy, physics, or higher mathematics is required.

Topics covered include our own Sun, stars and their evolution, galaxies, blackholes, and cosmology. It will also provide students with a basic understanding of how our nature works on the macroscopic level.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: One 1-hour written examination (50% weighting) together with course work, field trips, laboratory work, and night sky observations (50% weighting).

This course will be offered in the second semester.

---

**PHYS0601. God, the big bang and Stephen Hawking I (3 credits)**

This course, named after a recently published book by David Wilkinson, is for both science and non-science students to recognize the absence of any real conflict between science and religion. This course (part I) deals with religion and its interactions with cosmology.

The universality of religious belief. Understanding different belief systems. Natural theology. Metaphysics. The methodology of science. Presuppositions and limitations of science. Science applied to origins. An overview of relativity and quantum physics. Aristotelian cosmology. Copernican cosmology, The Galileo affair. Kantian cosmology. Big bang cosmology. The cosmological argument for God's existence. Stephen Hawking's contributions to space-time theory. The Hartle-Hawking "no boundary" proposal. Stochastic inflation models. Complementarity. Genesis one.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% continuous assessment including an essay, homework and web-based tests.

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**PHYS0602. Science or fiction? (3 credits)**

The course is designed as an exploration of the various ways in which science, particularly physics, has been used in the creation of the literary genre known as science fiction. One of its main purposes is to provide students with experience in expressing their ideas and opinions in written and spoken form and in developing their analytical and creative powers.

The course is a study of the genre of science fiction and uses as source material a selection of science-fiction films. Analysis of the scientific premises of the source material will involve discussion of such topics as the nature of time and the possibility of time travel, astrophysics and the strange properties of black holes, dark matter, neutron stars and such like, the possibility of extraterrestrial life, the second law of thermodynamics and entropy, Einstein's theory of relativity and the possibility of travelling faster than the speed of light. One component of the course is a writing assignment based on creating an outline/synopsis of a science-fiction story or film.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: One 2-hour written examination (50%) and course assessment (50%).

This course will be offered in the first semester.

---

**PHYS0603. Art and physics (3 credits)\***

The course is aimed at artistically inclined students who would like to know more about the New Physics, scientifically inclined students who would like to have a framework to appreciate Art, and anyone who is fascinated by both.

The basic premise of the course is that science and art are both legitimate investigations into the nature of reality; they are different, but complementary facets of a single description of the world. As such, the course traces parallel developments in science and art throughout history from the early Greeks to the modern day, revealing the common creative interplay between the two and the extraordinary way in which art often tends to anticipate the scientific revisions of reality. From early Greek sculptors to Andy Warhol, from Aristotle to Einstein, the course covers the major revolutions in science and art, glimpsing the achievements of the leading proponents in each. Special attention will be given to the concepts of space and time and to the use of perspective and colour.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: One 2-hour written examination (50%) and course assessment (50%).

This course will be offered in the second semester.

\* This course will be offered as broadening course in this academic year.

---

**PHYS0604. God, the big bang and Stephen Hawking II (3 credits)**

This course is a follow-up course to PHYS0601 which deals with teleological aspects of the interaction of science and religion.

Primitive teleological beliefs. Greek science and beliefs. Efficient and final causes. Aquinas. The teleological aspects of the interaction of science and religion. Anthropic balances. Complexity and order in the Universe.

Prerequisite: Nil.

Assessment: 100% continuous assessment including essays, homework and test.

This course will be offered in the second semester.



**PHYS0605. Nuclear energy and the environment (3 credits)\***

To introduce the use of nuclear power and its impact to our environment; and to arouse an awareness of the safety use of nuclear energy.

Natural and man-made radioactivity; health effects of radiations; fission and fusion; nuclear fuel cycles; nuclear power plants; nuclear explosions and nuclear weapons; risk assessment; accidents and interventions; radionuclide behavior in ecosystems; the future of nuclear power.

Prerequisite: Nil.

*Assessment: 1-hour written examination (60% weighting) and continuous assessment (40% weighting).*

This course will be offered in the first semester.

\* This course will be offered as broadening course in this academic year.

**PHYS1606. Introductory meteorology (3 credits)**

To introduce the phenomena and mechanisms of the atmosphere, including typhoons, tornadoes, El Nino and La Nina. This course is designed to be a non-mathematical exposition of weather and climate. It is suitable for any students with some minimum background in physics or science.

Topics include: Composition and structure of our atmosphere, the seasons, energy balance, humidity and temperature, clouds and precipitation, air pressure and winds, typhoons and tornadoes, lightning, weather forecasting and global climate changes.

Prerequisite: AL/AS Physics or Engineering Science.

*Assessment: One 1 hour written examination (50%) with course works (50%).*

This course will be offered in the second semester.

**PHYS2622. Science and society (6 credits)**

The course is designed as an exploration of the ways in which science and human society have developed and interacted throughout history up to the present time. One of its main purposes is to provide students with experience in expressing their ideas and opinions in written and spoken form. The course explores the role of science in society through its mutual interaction with philosophy, politics, ethics, religion, literature and other arts.

Prerequisite: Nil.

*Assessment: One 3-hour written examination (50% weighting) and course assessment (50% weighting).*

This course will be offered in the first semester.

**POLITICS AND PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION****Junior level courses**

There is no departmental prerequisite for admission to the junior level courses in Politics and Public Administration, namely, POLI1002 Fundamentals of Public Administration and POLI1003 Making Sense of Politics. Both carry 6 credits and last one semester. Students may take both courses.

The examination will consist of one two-hour paper. The final grading will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in the proportion 60:40.

### Senior level courses

Students taking the equivalent of eight 6-credit courses in Philosophy or American Studies may select up to eight courses in PPA, subject to the approval of the Head of Department and the completion of the specified prerequisites. All other students may select up to five courses, again subject to the approval of the Head of Department and the completion of specified prerequisites.

Not all the courses listed will necessarily be offered every year. Subject to availability, all courses may be taken in either year, except where a prerequisite is specified which must be taken in the second year.

One two-hour written paper will be set for each course in the Examination. Courses will be examined at the end of the semester in which they are taken.

Coursework will be based on a candidate's tutorial and seminar papers and performance in any class tests. Students are expected to participate fully in class discussions and this will also be taken into account. The final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and an assessment of coursework in the proportion 60:40.

### Syllabuses

#### *Junior Level Courses*

#### **POLI1002. Fundamentals of public administration (6 credits)**

This is a basic course in Public Administration. It seeks to introduce students to fundamental concepts and approaches to the subject. The three main areas of concern are: (1) the development of the discipline over the years; (2) the identification of the critical issues and problems related to modern public administration; and (3) the relationship between public administration and politics. In exploring these questions, special emphasis will be placed on the situation in Hong Kong.

#### **POLI1003. Making sense of politics (6 credits)**

This is a foundation course aimed at equipping students with the basic tools and concepts to make sense of the political world. Current issues will be discussed with the help of newspaper clippings and video excerpts. No prior knowledge of Government and Public Affairs (GPA) is needed.

#### *Senior Level Courses*

#### **POLI0001. A special topic in political science (6 credits)**

This unit is offered from time to time. Students should consult the Department on the content of the unit on offer.

#### **POLI0002. A special topic in political theory (6 credits)**

Each year (if possible) a political theory unit will be offered under this heading. The topic chosen will depend upon the interests of staff and students. Students should consult the department on the content of the course on offer.

**POLI0003. Approaches to foreign policy analysis (6 credits)**

The process by which states arrive at foreign policy positions is the central focus of this unit. Examples will be drawn largely from the USA, China and the United Kingdom. Major crises and events will be studied in some detail to underline the action - reaction nature of foreign policy. The unit is intended for those who have studied **Understanding global issues** in a previous semester.

---

**POLI0004. Bureaucracy and the public (6 credits)**

This unit examines the political, legal and social dimensions of interaction between bureaucracies and the public. Consideration will be given to the effectiveness of complaint-handling institutions, such as the ombudsman, Freedom of Information Acts, secrecy provisions and the roles played by street-level bureaucrats.

---

**POLI0005. Capitalism and social justice (6 credits)**

This course discusses the morality of capitalism with reference to such issues as exploitation, social justice and equality. Topics include the philosophical defence of free-market capitalism, egalitarian theories of social justice, Marxist critique of capitalism, the concept of exploitation, and market socialism.

---

**POLI0006. China and Hong Kong: the politics of transition (6 credits)**

The development of relations between China and Hong Kong since 1979 is critical to an understanding of Hong Kong's current political problems. This course focuses on the Sino-British negotiations, the Joint Declaration, the Basic Law and issues of autonomy, representative government and Hong Kong's political, economic and legal interaction with China.

---

**POLI0008. Comparative foreign policy analysis (6 credits)**

Emphasis in this unit is placed on a limited number of state systems to allow greater empirical testing of the approaches and theories outlined in **POLI0003**.

---

**POLI0009. Comparative politics (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the methods and issues of comparative politics. It will examine the logic and method of comparative politics and some key issues in the comparative study of political behaviour, institutions and processes, such as political culture, political participation, political parties, intergovernmental relations, state-society relations and political development.

---

**POLI0010. Democracy and its critics (6 credits)**

This course discusses basic and practical issues concerning the nature, justification, and limits of democracy. Topics include the concept and foundations of democracy, participatory democracy, the elitist challenge to democracy, Marxist critique of capitalist democracy, and others.

**POLI0011. Development and underdevelopment (6 credits)**

This course will survey the prevailing theories in social science related to the issue of how countries achieve 'development' in the contemporary world. The emphasis will be on the countries of the South. Topics will expand upon variegated versions of: Modernization Theory, Dependency, Imperialism and the World Economy, World-Systems Analysis, the State, and Development Strategies.

---

**POLI0012. East Asian political economy (6 credits)**

This course aims to examine the political processes that underlie the rapid economic transformation of East Asian countries. We will mainly cover Japan and the newly industrializing economies, namely Singapore, Hong Kong, Taiwan, and South Korea, but comparisons with China and other emerging economies such as Malaysia and Thailand will also be made. We will first introduce the salient features of the East Asian model of development and we will then analyze the pattern of political development, the relations between the state and other political actors, the development of administrative system, as well as the impact of international relations and strategic factors on the domestic political and economic processes of these cases.

---

**POLI0013. Elections and representative democracy (6 credits)**

This course examines the relationship between various aspects of elections and representative democracy. Electoral systems, the electoral process, and the role of political parties, among other topics, will be studied in relation to democratic principles and theories of representation. Examples will be drawn from both Hong Kong and other political systems.

---

**POLI0014. European politics (6 credits)**

This unit seeks to examine specific aspects of the remarkable changes taking place in both Eastern and Western Europe. Students should consult the Department for further information on the unit since the content may vary from year to year.

---

**POLI0015. Ethics and public affairs (6 credits)**

This unit explores the relationship between moral philosophy and public administration. Three central questions are examined: (1) On what basis should limited resources in society be distributed? (2) What constitutes moral conduct on the part of public officials? and (3) What is the proper balance between government's coercive authority and individual liberty?

---

**POLI0016. Gender and development (6 credits)**

This course introduces a gender dimension to the study of Third World politics. It traces the development of gender concerns in western development theory and practice in the past three decades, and explores in greater depth some of the key themes which arise from the situation of the developing world today. These themes include colonialism and decolonization; nationalism; democratization; globalization and economic restructuring; as well as Hong Kong and international women's movements.

### **POLI0017. Government and business (6 credits)**

This course explores the interplay between government and business within major East Asian countries and how regional economic dynamism is shaping regional international relations in East Asia. The theoretical focus is on how government policy affects the market and how economic forces shape government political decisions. At the international level, it seeks to examine the political basis of regional economic integration and the economic foundation of international political cooperation in East Asia. Issue areas for this course include: the economic dynamism in East Asia, sub-regional economic growth circles, patterns of trade and investment, APEC, and security challenges and economic regionalism.

---

### **POLI0018. The Japanese way of politics (6 credits)**

The Japanese political system before the early 1990s had been described as 'karaoke democracy.' Just like in a karaoke stage whereby visible singers come and go but songs remain the same, prime ministers and cabinets changed in the Japanese political stage yet policy directions remained largely unchanged. Nonetheless, the 'karaoke democracy' has become a thing of past. Since the early 1990s, Japanese politics has been in a state of flux. The Liberal Democratic Party (LDP), which had dominated Japanese politics for more than 38 years, collapsed in 1993. The Japan Socialist Party (JSP), the once main opposition party in the country, has increasingly faded into oblivion. After the reform of the electoral system in recent years, there has emerged a genuine multi-party system whereby frequent inter-party alignment and realignment becomes the order of the day. The national bureaucracy, reputed for its influential status, has come under severe public criticism and political attacks in the wake of prolonged economic slump.

The main questions to be addressed in this course include: What are the main characteristics of the Japanese democracy? How does it differ from other liberal democracies? Why had the LDP maintained its long-lasting rule between 1955 and 1993? What is the role of the bureaucracy in Japanese politics? How does the business community exert its political influence? What are the main characteristics of the Japanese political culture? How do ordinary Japanese and social groups exercise their political power? What are the main sources of political change in the 1990s? What contributed to the end of the LDP's dominance in national politics? What are the main changes in the electoral system? How do the Japanese political culture and domestic politics affect Japanese foreign relations?

---

### **POLI0019. Hong Kong and the world (6 credits)**

Hong Kong's interactions with the outside world are critical to its role as a major international city and will shape its ability to position itself as the leading gateway to the mainland of China. While Hong Kong's 'foreign affairs portfolio' is controlled by China, Hong Kong retains considerable autonomy in shaping its international destiny. What global course should Hong Kong leaders chart? This class will examine the special administrative Region's special international status, the political dimensions of its international economic-cultural-social links, and its complex identity as a Chinese world city. Moreover, it intends to explore the multiple and variegated external linkages between Hong Kong and the world within the context of globalization. Prominent members of the Hong Kong community will be invited to share their perspectives on Hong Kong's track record in facing the challenges and opportunities associated with today's highly interdependent global system. By exploring these themes with reference to the changing nature of the global system, the course hopes to provide students with in-depth knowledge of Hong Kong's international links and enhance their understanding of the complex problems of global governance.

**POLI0020. Hong Kong politics (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the legal and institutional structure of the Hong Kong government and the public sector. The political culture and attitudes of the Hong Kong people are discussed, and also pressure groups and political parties.

---

**POLI0021. Understanding global issues (6 credits)**

The Cold War has ended, but our globe is far from being peaceful and secure. Newspaper headlines are dominated by international issues like regional financial crises, war in Kosovo, South Asian arms race or Sino-U.S disputes. To help students understand global issues closely linking to their everyday life and future careers, this course teaches basic concepts and approaches to international relations and major issues in global affairs. As we are living in a 'shrinking' world characterized by globalization and economic interdependence, the focus of this course is on processes and impacts of globalization on international relations. The purpose of this course is to introduce different concepts and perspectives of international relations and help students to understand and objectively appreciate complex phenomena of today's world affairs. The issues studied in the course will include the global economic system, causes of the Asian financial crisis, global environment protection, regionalism and economic integration, 'clashes of civilizations,' global war and peace, arms race and arms control in world affairs. After taking this course, students are expected to have a basic understanding of how world affairs are shaped by various forces at the national as well as global level and how the trend of globalization has changed interaction among states.

---

**POLI0022. Governing China (6 credits)**

This course is an introduction to contemporary Chinese politics. The main objective of this course is to understand the ideology, institutions and processes of the contemporary Chinese political system and explore the socio-economic consequences, achievements, and problems of Chinese socialism.

---

**POLI0023. Issues in contemporary Chinese politics (6 credits)**

An overview of some recent policy changes in China which are studied in the light of two main themes: the different ways in which political power is manifested, and the changing perceptions of ways in which governance of the state can best be effected: and to what ends.

---

**POLI0024. Issues in public administration (6 credits)**

This unit offers an opportunity for students to examine current issues in public administration, particularly those facing the Hong Kong government.

---

**POLI0025. Managerial skills in public organizations (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the activities and functions of managers in public organizations. Emphasis is put on the environment and context within which public managers operate, and various managerial skills and tools that are essential to effective public managers. Students are expected to acquire skills to manage conflicts, lead, manage resources, communicate, and make decisions in the context of public organizations. Reference is made to the experiences in various public or non-profit organizations in Hong Kong.

**POLI0026. Marxism and political theory (6 credits)**

This unit provides an overview of contemporary Marxism. Topics include: dialectical and historical materialism; political economy; the theory of exploitation; classes, class consciousness and class struggle; and Marx's theory of politics. An attempt is made to discuss central debates in Marxian thought and to catch their dynamic development, given historical changes in current socialism.

---

**POLI0027. Public policy-making: Theories and application (6 credits)**

This course is designed to introduce students to major theoretical frameworks that have been devised to understand and explain public policy-making. The main questions asked are: why are certain policies made instead of others? What are the major factors that affect public policy-making? Empirical studies from both Hong Kong and elsewhere are included to illustrate the application of the theories. [Students wishing to take this course will normally have taken first year introductory courses in our department. Students are free to take the course either in their second or third year of studies, but as the course involves some levels of difficulty, it *may* be advisable to take the course in the third year rather than in the second.]

---

**POLI0028. Political economy (6 credits)**

An introductory survey of the main contending schools of political economy in which 'Positive', Marxist and international political economy theories are discussed, and differentiated one from the other. Such theories are grounded in illustrative country case studies.

---

**POLI0029. Political theory (6 credits)**

This course is an introduction to liberalism, which primarily concerns the proper scope of personal freedom and state power. Topics include liberty and autonomy, the harm principle, paternalism, legal moralism, liberal neutrality, utilitarian justifications of liberalism, and right-based justifications of liberalism.

---

**POLI0030. Politics and the economy in Canada (6 credits)**

A survey of the institutions and process of Canadian government with particular reference to the relationship between the economy and the political system.

---

**POLI0031. Politics of economic reform in China (6 credits)**

This course examines the politics of economic reform in contemporary China. Issues covered include the connections between politics and economics, the political debates over economic reforms, the rationale and themes of the economic reform programme and the social and political consequences resulting from the implementation of these reforms. Reform policies to be studied include rural reform, enterprise reform, central-local relations as well as foreign economic policy.

---

**POLI0033. Problems of the Third World (6 credits)**

This course will consider a range of concrete problems which have assumed primacy in the political, economic and social experience of Third World countries. Issues discussed will include: Poverty; Population; Debt; Colonialism; Politics, Democratization and Gender questions; the New International Economic Order.

**POLI0034. Public administration in China (6 credits)**

This course aims to provide a critical introduction to public administration in contemporary China. Key topics that will be covered include the organization of the political system, policy-making and implementation, public finance, local government, central-local relations, as well as the impacts of economic reform and legal reform on government. The political and administrative implications of China's integration with the world economy will also be explored.

---

**POLI0035. Public administration in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

Hong Kong has long been described as an administrative state. It is a unique feature of public administration in Hong Kong that it dominates both policy-making and policy implementation. The purpose of this course is to introduce students to the major issues confronting public administration in Hong Kong and to consider questions of accountability in public administration.

---

**POLI0037. Managing people in public organizations (6 credits)**

This course examines the environment, institutions, processes and issues involved in the management of people in public organizations, particularly the Hong Kong government. Comparisons are made to the experience of managing people in public organizations overseas.

---

**POLI0038. Public policy and democracy (6 credits)**

This course examines arguments for a more fundamental rethinking about the proper roles of government, community organizations, and citizens in public policy-making and new forms of service delivery. Potential consequences of reforms for program effectiveness as well as for political and social citizenship will be considered.

---

**POLI0039. Public policy analysis (6 credits)**

This is an introductory course in the production of advice for public decisions and actions. This course emphasizes both the art and craft of policy analysis. The 'art' dimension focuses on the skills in defining problems for analysis. The 'craft' dimension, on the other hand, is concerned with theories, skills, and techniques that can be used to analyze, design, and assess policy options. Illustration is made with reference to policy problems in Hong Kong.

---

**POLI0040. Public sector management (6 credits)**

This course examines the structural design and operation of the public sector as well as public organizations. Issues such as the use of various forms of organization in public service delivery, the adoption of corporatization and privatization, and public sector reform will be addressed. Reference is made to the experience in Hong Kong.

---

**POLI0041. Research methods for politics and public administration (6 credits)**

Relevant, valid and reliable information is essential in making sound political and administrative decisions. This course examines issues on research design, measurement and scaling, sampling, and data collection and analysis, with emphasis on methods commonly used by politicians and public administrators such as mailed questionnaires, telephone interviews and focus groups. The course also examines the use of opinion polls, interpretation of poll results, and their effects on elections.



**POLI0042. The government and politics of industrialized countries (6 credits)**

This course studies the government and politics of industrialized countries, such as the United States and the United Kingdom. Areas covered include the parliament, executive, constitution, electoral system, judiciary, bureaucracy and the party system. Comparisons with other industrialized countries, like Japan, will be made.

---

**POLI0043. The government and politics of the United Kingdom (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the central government of Britain. Local government systems and the problem of Northern Ireland will not be discussed. The course will cover the constitution, civil liberties, parliament, the Prime Minister and the cabinet, political parties, pressure groups and the electoral system. The decolonization of the British Empire and the present relationship between Britain and Hong Kong will also be discussed.

---

**POLI0044. American democracy (6 credits)**

The political system of the United States is often touted as the quintessential democracy in the world. Through institutional mechanisms such as free election, competitive party system, the division of power between three branches of government, the system is to provide the best safeguards for liberty and equality. While the democratic ideals embodied in the system have inspired many, the system also contains some important flaws. This course is to put the political system to the test. What are the philosophical foundations of the political system? How are the powers divided among different branches of federal government and between the federal government and state governments? How do individuals and interest groups exercise political power? How does the system work? What are the strengths and weaknesses of the system in comparison with other types of political systems? What is the role of American political culture in politics? To answer these questions, we will examine the philosophical foundation and the working mechanisms of the American political system. The course will cover important topical issues such as the constitution, the presidency, Congress, the judiciary, federalism, interest groups, party system, electoral politics and bureaucracy. Attention will also be given to other important issues such as policy-making process, civil rights, and racial politics.

---

**POLI0045. The political economy of the European Union (6 credits)**

This course examines the political and economic dimension of the European Union. It will include a consideration of its political history, structure, policies and the effects of the market on national politics and economies.

---

**POLI0046. Thesis in politics or public administration (12 credits)**

The thesis will consist of an investigation into a relevant aspect of politics or public administration which must be chosen in consultation with the supervisor before July 1 in the year preceding the final examination. The thesis must be submitted before April 1 of the following year.

---

**POLI0047. United States foreign policy (6 credits)**

By enhancing student understanding of the causes and consequences of American foreign policy choices, this course seeks to groom well-informed and objective critics of U.S. foreign policy. Organized into 3 sections, the course will begin by providing students with a historical overview of the domestic and international factors which have shaped the intellectual foundations of U.S. foreign policy. In the second part of the course, students will examine the domestic political actors involved in international policy formulation and implementation. In the third section, students will apply their knowledge of the domestic roots of U.S. foreign policy decisions in order to critically evaluate some of the major international policy decisions made by the U.S. since WWII. The course will conclude with a discussion of the future of U.S. foreign policy, paying particular attention to the impact of the 911 attacks on the American world view.

**POLI0048. Urbanization and urban poverty (6 credits)**

This unit considers specific policy problems related to the phenomenal growth of urbanization and urban poverty in the Third World. The starting point is a perusal of current World Bank and United Nations reports. Topics include: contending approaches to understanding the urban socio-economic structure; urban politics and social movements; 'peripheral' capitalist versus socialist urbanization; housing policy; basic needs and human development strategies. The unit emphasizes the social, political and economic constraints on the state in formulating development policy.

---

**POLI0049. War and peace in international relations (6 credits)**

This course examines why war occurs in international relations and how peace and stability can be achieved among nations. It introduces students to different theories and approaches to the problem of war and peace in international politics and provides a basic understanding about national security strategy in international relations studies. Specific issues explored in this course include military alliance, regional conflicts, nuclear deterrence, nonproliferation, and military intervention.

---

**POLI0050. Women and politics (6 credits)**

What has politics to do with women and what have women to do with politics? The first part of the course explores the concept of citizenship and the role of women in the body politic. How well do women fare as candidates in elections? Is there a glass ceiling for women who pursue a career in government? The second part of the course takes a comparative perspective on legislative recruitment and representation in public bureaucracies. Do women behave differently when they are in positions of power? Could women transform the nature and content of politics? The last part of the course focuses on women's political behaviour and discusses their capacity to transform politics.

---

**POLI0051. Issues in Chinese political philosophy (6 credits)**

A comparative study of Chinese and Western political philosophy, with special emphasis on Confucianism and liberalism. Topics include the nature of classical Confucian political thought, the developments of the Confucian traditions in response to local political changes and to the challenges presented by Western liberalism, the contemporary discourse on Confucianism and human rights, freedom, and democracy, and other related issues. Reference will be made to Chinese materials.

---

**POLI0052. International relations of East Asia (6 credits)**

This course is designed to study the power structure and patterns of conflict and cooperation in East Asia. It examines the cause and consequence of the great power rivalry in East Asia in the context of historical experiences and geopolitical environment. Special attention will be paid to the following issue areas: (1) regional power structure and dynamics; (2) Sino-Japanese relations; (3) the role of the United States in East Asia; (4) the emerging role of ASEAN; (5) potential regional conflict zones: the Korean Peninsula, the Taiwan Straits, and the South China Sea.

---

**POLI0057. Understanding public finance in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

This course examines public finance as a recurring process of planning, control and evaluation in the acquisition, allocation and use of scarce public resources. Emphasis will be placed on the political and socio-economic, rather than mathematical, aspects of the process with examples drawn mainly from Hong Kong.

**POLI0058. Managing the global economy (6 credits)**

This course examines the interaction of politics and economics in international relations with reference to the world economy's most dynamic region - the Asia-Pacific. It identifies the political considerations in global economic relations and analyzes the impact of economic factors on international relations. With reference to developments in the Asia-Pacific region, the course addresses four major areas. First, different theoretical perspectives on the free market global economy such as free trade versus environmental protection and competing priorities in different countries. Second, the key institutions in the global economic system -- the World Bank, the International Monetary Fund, and the World Trade Organization (WTO). Third, critical issues in East Asia such as the role of the state in economic management, security and political factors in international economic relations and the prospects of regional economic co-operation. Finally, the major political challenges arising from economic conflicts in individual countries in the Asia-Pacific region.

---

**POLI0059. China and the world (6 credits)**

China's place in the world has changed dramatically since the establishment of the People's Republic of China in 1949. How do we account for the transformation of the country's position from being a Soviet ally challenging the West, to an independent radical revolutionary state, and then reform-minded country eager to join the international community? As communism collapsed elsewhere after the end of the Cold War China is becoming an emerging global power practising 'socialism with Chinese characteristics'. How do we understand and analyze China's relations with the rest of the world? This course examines China's interaction with the rest of the world since 1949, with reference on competing perspectives including power-political, economic inter-dependence and historical-cultural analysis. The course concludes with a critical assessment of China's position in a globalizing world.

---

**POLI0060. Public financial management (6 credits)**

The purpose of this course is to provide an overview of financial management in the public sector from a theoretical and practical perspective. The focus is primarily on the conceptual, methodological and institutional aspects of public expenditure and revenue management. The subject is approached largely from an economic standpoint, but there is also some exposure to accounting principles. However, no previous knowledge of either economics or accounting is assumed.

---

**POLI0061. Hong Kong and South China: The political economy of regional development and cooperation (6 credits)**

The phenomenal economic growth in south China since the late 1970s is a major event in contemporary China. The growing integration between Hong Kong and south China has profound implications not only for this region, but also for China and Asia as a whole. This course aims to analyze such an important development and its many implications. It is divided into three parts. Part I offers a theoretical and historical overview of the development of the south China region. Theoretical approaches in the study of regionalism, intergovernmental relations and globalization will be introduced and their relevance for studying south China will be explored. Part II overviews the social, economic and political links between Hong Kong and Greater China and the developmental experience of south China since the late 1970s. Part III will focus on several key issues in regional development and cooperation in the south China region, including intergovernmental cooperation mechanisms, economic and technological development, demographic flows, boundary control, transportation and infra-structural development, as well as environmental management.

## PSYCHOLOGY

1. The selection of courses and special topics in psychology available in a particular year is subject to the approval of the Head of the Department. A candidate taking the equivalent of eight 6-credit courses in psychology must include 3 compulsory courses: Research methods in psychology I (PSYC0001); Cognitive Psychology (PSYC0007) and Thesis in Psychology (PSYC3001) (or a laboratory course equivalent\*), and 3 other required courses from the following 2 streams with at least one course from each stream. First stream: Biological psychology (PSYC0022), Perception (PSYC0051) and Human neuropsychology (PSYC0054). Second stream: Life-span developmental psychology (PSYC0009), History & issues in psychology (PSYC0010), Psychology of personality (PSYC0019) and Fundamentals of social psychology (PSYC0020).  
(\*Note: Updated information on available laboratory courses will be put on the departmental website.)
2. Students who intend to major in Psychology must have taken **PSYC1001, or PSYC1002 and PSYC1003**. Students who have taken PSYC1001 should not take PSYC1002 or PSYC1003 and vice versa. In course registration, students should pay special attention to the prerequisite of courses as specified in the syllabuses. In exceptional cases these may be waived by the Head of the Department.
3. In addition to class sessions, each course may include a practical element on which a candidate may expect to spend about two hours per week.
4. The final grading for each course will be determined by performance in the examination and by assessment of coursework in a ratio of 40% coursework, 60% examination, unless otherwise specified.

### Junior-level courses

#### **PSYC1001. Introduction to psychology (6 credits)**

Discussion of basic concepts in psychology and a preliminary survey of representative work carried out in various areas of psychological investigation, together with an investigation at some length of one such area.

Assessment will be based on coursework (40%) and an examination (60%).

**Cannot be taken with PSYC1002 and PSYC1003.**

#### **PSYC1002. How the mind works: Explorations in basic thinking processes (6 credits)**

We are all fascinated by the achievements of the human mind or brain. But we may also often ask ourselves how we can do things better, for example, remember more efficiently. This course will help us to understand more about the ways in which we solve problems, how we develop our abilities to communicate through language, and how we think creatively. It will help us to answer questions about why we forget things, how we manage to see things in the world around us, why we sleep and what our dreams mean. We will look at the ways in which the human brain operates, and how it manages to do such amazing things, through reference to research findings, theories and our own practical work. Lectures will include class demonstrations and activities, as well as videos, presented in a way to enhance your interest in, and memory of, what is already a fascinating area.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**Cannot not be taken with PSYC1001.**

**PSYC1003. Psychology and life: Personality and social influence (6 credits)**

Through lectures and a series of stimulating class activities, students in this course will learn the latest research discoveries in motivation and emotion, human development, intelligence, personality, psychological testing, stress and health, abnormal psychological functioning, psychotherapy, social attraction, social influence and social competence. The course is intended to enhance the development of self-understanding and social competence.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**Cannot not be taken with PSYC1001.**

---

**Senior-level courses****PSYC0001. Research methods in psychology I (6 credits)**

This course adopts a practical approach to teaching the fundamental aspects of research techniques in psychology. It is designed to provide students with the necessary background for their own independent research into areas of psychological interest. The techniques of experimental design, the logic of statistical inference and scientific explanation and their relations to human values, the limitations of, and alternatives to, experimental approaches to the study of psychological phenomena will all be discussed.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or PSYC1002 or PSYC1003.**

---

**PSYC0002. Psychological testing and measurement (6 credits)**

This course surveys the major concepts and techniques in the field of psychometrics, and provides the student with some hands-on experience with commonly used tests. Topics covered include: the context of testing and measurement; the testing process; test standardization; reliability and validity; intelligence and its appraisal; personality assessment; special domain testing; occupational applications; large-scale measurements; ethics and prospects.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0004. Psychology of reading (6 credits)**

This course examines the reading process and reading disability from an information processing perspective. Topics covered include visual acuity, pattern recognition, the unit of language perception, eye movement, phonological awareness, phonological recoding, the role of visual and auditory functions in reading and reading disability, and orthography differences in reading and reading disability.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0005. Introduction to counselling and therapeutic psychology (6 credits)**

Provides a theoretical foundation for students who wish to learn the fundamentals of counselling or to explore their potential for professional training in mental health. Some experiential learning will be used. Major approaches; skills and practice; ethics and limitations of counselling. Working with various clinical and non-clinical populations. Cultural values and socio-political contexts. Outcome and process research.

Assessment of this course is based entirely on coursework.

**PSYC0006. Psychology of adolescent development (6 credits)**

This course deals with developmental changes in adolescence, considered from a systems perspective, with the person, the environment, and behaviour interacting over time. Topics to be covered include: methodological issues in studying adolescent development; changes in adolescent cognitive and intellectual functioning and personality and social development in adolescence. The challenges of this period of development will be a special focus and include gender issues and at risk behaviours.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisites: **[PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003)] and PSYC0009.**

---

**PSYC0007. Cognitive psychology (6 credits)**

This course covers how humans learn to deal with information from the environment. Topics include various aspects of perception, memory, concept structure and learning, and thinking. Students will be involved in conducting experiments on cognitive functioning as part of the coursework.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or PSYC1002.**

---

**PSYC0008. Advanced cognitive psychology (6 credits)**

This course covers some recent approaches in the field of cognitive psychology. Topics may include the cognitive unconscious in perception and memory, conditioning versus cognitive learning in humans, neural networks and information processing, as well as other topics reflecting the interests of the teacher.

Prerequisites: **(PSYC1001 or PSYC1002) and PSYC0007.**

---

**PSYC0009. Life-span developmental psychology (6 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to developmental psychology from a life-span perspective. The topics include: basic concepts and theories of human development; research methodology and issues in the study of developmental change; biological, environmental and social influences on development; processes of physical development over the life-span; attachment and emotional development; development of perception, language, cognition and morality; development of personality and social relationships.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

---

**PSYC0010. History and issues in psychology (6 credits)**

An examination of some of the major issues and controversies in the history of psychology which are important for the current debate and its continuation.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0011. Brain and behaviour (6 credits)**

Research in physiological psychology has led to an increased understanding of how the brain is involved in the psychology of everyday behaviour. This course will address the basic mechanisms underlying the psychology of human behaviour and experience, starting with the assumption that all fundamental psychological processes have a physiological basis. The course further examines the case for a psychology based on studies of brain-behaviour relationships. Special topics of study will depend upon student interests, but may include memory and learning, perception, attention and states of awareness, consciousness, meditation, sleep and dreaming, emotions, psychopathology. A knowledge of biology at HKCEE level is required for this course.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or PSYC1002.**

**PSYC0012. Advertising psychology (6 credits)**

This course surveys general issues, research, and findings concerning the way people react to advertisements in print or broadcasted on television or radio. To be considered in the course are people's affective and cognitive reactions to advertisements, influences of motivational factors and interpersonal dynamics on effectiveness of advertisements, and the relations between culture and advertising.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0013. Psychology of calligraphy (6 credits)**

This course discusses Chinese and Western calligraphic behaviour from the perspectives of perception, personality, cognition and development. Other considerations will include creative processes, abilities, and appreciation of calligraphic art.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PSYC0014. Psychology and religion (6 credits)**

Issues arising from interface between psychology and religion will be examined in this course. Topics to be covered may include: approaches to integrate psychological and theological perspectives; psychological and social correlates of religious experience; cults and occults; sin and guilt; religious orientations; religious decision-making; cognitive fallacy of the religious and the non-religious; relationships between religious beliefs and behaviours.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisites: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0016. The psychology of stress and health (6 credits)**

This course adopts a biopsychosocial approach in exploring current issues and research on stress and health. Special emphasis is placed on the Hong Kong situation. Topics covered include: concepts of stress; the roles of cognition, personality and physiology in the stress response; social stressors; coping, stress management and health promotion; concepts of health and wellness; cultural implications. Students in this course shall undertake independent research projects.

Assessment for this course is based entirely on coursework.

---

**PSYC0017. Motivation and achievement (6 credits)**

This course is an introduction to theories and research on achievement motivation. The course will cover a variety of topics including: motivation as a personal trait; situational causes of motivation; cognition and motivation; sociocultural influences on motivation and achievement; the role of meaning in motivation; sex differences in achievement and work investment; age and achievement motivation; enhancing motivation in learning.

Prerequisites: **[PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003)] and (PSYC0019 or PSYC0020 or PSYC0035).**

---

**PSYC0018. Psychology and the arts (6 credits)**

This course examines some psychological approaches to the study of the 'arts' defined very broadly and may include fine arts, photography, film, television, literature and music. The development of these practices will be briefly examined as will the possibilities for assessing the responses of the individual spectator, reader or listener to each of them.

**PSYC0019. Psychology of personality (6 credits)**

This course will critically examine and attempt a synthesis of a number of theories of personality as exemplified in the lives of some of the significant figures in the field. The relationship of specific theories to practical applications, personality assessment and psychotherapeutic techniques may be included. The major aims of the course are to provide a survey of the breadth and complexity of this field and to provide a perspective from which to examine assumptions about human nature and the evaluation of behaviour.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

---

**PSYC0020. Fundamentals of social psychology (6 credits)**

The course gives an overview of the field which studies the behaviour of individuals in social contexts. It covers social perception, social cognition, social motivation, attitudes and attitude change, attitude and behaviour, aggression, helping, moral behaviour, social influence on individual behaviour and group dynamics. The effects of Chinese culture on various social behaviours will form the part of the discussion.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

---

**PSYC0021. Psychology in China: heritage and contemporary research (6 credits)**

This course examines some traditional Chinese concepts and issues, as well as important contemporary research in China. Topics include Qigong, psychopathology and psychotherapy from a traditional Chinese viewpoint, sports and health psychology, organizational behaviour etc.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0022. Biological psychology (6 credits)**

This course provides an introduction to biological aspects of behaviour. The topics include: biological bases of behaviour, development, learning, memory, and abnormal psychology; the nervous system; processes of brain maturation; genetic influences; psychophysiology.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or PSYC1002.**

---

**PSYC0023. Psychology of human communication (6 credits)**

This course is a laboratory course in applied social psychology. It examines the cognitive and interpersonal bases of human communication. Topics include: the cognitive and interpersonal processes involved in message formulation and comprehension; the communicative functions of nonverbal behaviour such as filled pauses and hand gestures; the cognitive and social consequences of language use; and social cognitive models of persuasive communication.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0024. Interpersonal relationships in Chinese societies (6 credits)**

This course explores, from an indigenous perspective, the social interactional processes and the notion of interpersonal relationships in Chinese societies. Specifically, it examines how the indigenous concept of guanxi (關係) operates in everyday social interactions and how it relates to other concepts, such as meinzi (面子), renqing (人情), trust, and loyalty. Through practical exercises, experience sharing, strategic planning and discussions of relevant local examples, the students will learn the skills to deal with people in real-life work environments.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**



**PSYC0025. Personal and social competencies I (6 credits)**

Emphasizing the utility of theoretical knowledge, this course begins with a general theoretical orientation to psychological functioning and a thorough examination of the recent theoretical controversies raised by the publication of a few best-selling books in the psychology of competencies (The Bell Curve, Emotional Intelligence, and Successful Intelligence). Then, in each module, we survey the scientific research evidence pertinent to the cognitive and social ingredients of the major types of competencies: learning competence, emotional competence, social competence, practical intelligence, creativity, and moral competence.

One of the goals or objectives of Psychology is to sensitize learners to an understanding of ourselves as individuals and as members of a social group, society or culture. At the individual level, a well-adjusted individual is one who is aware of his/her strengths, limitations as well as potentialities for growth. This course also serves to promote self-awareness, and to develop such essential ingredients of psychological health as creativity, self-regulatory, emotional and interpersonal competencies, and the capacity to participate in community life. These objectives are achieved by having the student engage in a set of growth-facilitating activities designed on the basis of scientific psychological knowledge. In each module, students are required to participate actively in extended tutorials, workshops, and/or community projects to explore the practical implications of theoretical knowledge.

Each student will take four modules in a course. The modules are: M#1. General orientation to psychological functioning; M#2. Self-growth; M#3. Creativity; M#4. Learning competence; M#5. Emotional intelligence and self-regulation; M#6. Social competence; M#7. Practical intelligence; M#8. Leadership skills; M#9. Conflict resolution; M#10. Love, sex, and marriage; M#11. Social participation; and M#12. Religion and psychology.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PSYC0026. Personal and social competencies II (6 credits)**

Please refer to **PSYC0025** for the course description. Students are required to take four modules other than those they have taken in **PSYC0025**.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PSYC0028. Undergraduate seminar in psychology (6 credits)**

This course aims at enhancing students' research competence and analytical skills in psychology. Students will be exposed to a wide variety of theoretical, as well as qualitative and quantitative methodological approaches to psychological research. The course emphasizes creative, constructive and critical thinking. Through class activities such as exercises, discussions and presentations, students will learn how to plan, read and critically evaluate psychological research. This course is highly recommended for students planning to do an undergraduate thesis in psychology.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003)**.

---

**PSYC0029. Cognitive development (6 credits)**

This course will explore the development of our cognitive abilities and capacities through early childhood, when the most complex and interesting changes occur. Cognition, in the form of problem-solving, memory, attention, categorization, language and so on, is at the core of what makes us human. Changes in these abilities are closely related to developments in our physical, motor, and perceptual capacities, as well as to social and emotional growth. Our understanding of the development of a person's ability to think, reason and conceptualize has advanced significantly in the past few decades; we will examine both the findings and experimental methods of recent research on these topics.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003)**.

**PSYC0030. Computational models of behaviour (6 credits)**

An advanced course that explores some areas of psychological research where computational models can usefully be developed. Computer models that are constrained by neurobiological data can help reveal how networks of neurones subserve perception and behaviour. Detailed attention will be given to computational analysis of problems in biological sensing, motor control, and perception. Computational models of human visual perception, in particular David Marr's seminal work, will also be discussed.

---

**PSYC0032. Engineering psychology (6 credits)**

This course examines how knowledge in experimental/cognitive psychology is applied to the design of man-machine interface, tools, games, consumer products, etc. Students will appreciate how better designs lead to positive outcomes such as higher user satisfaction, lower accident rate, and lower job stress. Topics include human skills, motor theory, human-computer interaction, safety and health, work design, attention and performance. Most recent psychological studies on advanced technologies such as virtual reality and three-dimensional displays will be introduced. Students will also learn from site visits how such designs are implemented in real settings.

Assessment: 80% coursework, 20% examination.

---

**PSYC0033. Industrial psychology (6 credits)**

This course surveys the application of psychological principles and methods to the analysis of the complex relationships that exist between people and their work. Topics include job analysis, personnel selection, personnel training, vocational guidance, work evaluation, occupational stress, and errors.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisites: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0034. Introduction to abnormal psychology (6 credits)**

This course will provide a broad exposure to both theory and practice in abnormal psychology. It is a foundation course in mental health, counseling and other psychological services. Also it will provide the information and understanding required to make informed decisions about how to cope with the many social problems connected with mental disorders. A wide array of types of mental disorders will be examined. Important themes will be emphasized such as the continuum in behaviour from mental health to mental illness, the diathesis-stress and nature-nurture models and epidemiology.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

---

**PSYC0035. Introduction to educational psychology (6 credits)**

This course focuses on how psychological theories are applied to learning, teaching, and facilitation of human growth. The topics include major developmental theories and their application to learning and instruction, learning theories from both behavioral and cognitive traditions, effective teaching methods and practices, learners' individual and group differences, achievement motivation, and assessment. Students will be involved in learning activities that require self-reflection and integration of daily life experience.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

**PSYC0036. Special topics in psychology (6 credits)**

This course provides an opportunity to study in some depth an area of psychology of interest to student and a staff member alike. Individual topics may have special requirements for eligibility. Students taking this course may select one topic from the list of topics to be announced in the semester immediately prior to that in which they are taken.

Assessment for this course is based entirely on coursework.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or PSYC1002 or PSYC1003.**

---

**PSYC0038. Psychology of language and bilingualism (6 credits)**

A study of the processes involved in language comprehension and production, including the acquisition of a native as well as second language. The cognitive bases of language learning and use, the psychology of reading and reading disabilities, the comparison of psychological aspects of the Chinese language and other languages. Cognitive functions of the bilingual, the bilingual brain, psychological factors in second language learning.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0039. Medical psychology (6 credits)**

This course covers a number of aspects of medicine that are intimately related to psychology. It will examine aspects of medical practice and professionalism; however, the overall emphasis will be on psychological contributions to the disease process, and concepts of health and illness. Topics to be covered may include traditional psychosomatic disorders, stress and illness, drugs and drug addiction, pain, sleep disorders, psychosurgery, hospitalization of children and adults, doctor-patient communication, and cultural and psychological features of alternative medicine. The course will comprise an in-depth study of a few of these areas, chosen according to interests, complemented by a series of video-tapes, and incorporating a small group project in one area of interest.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0040. Cross-cultural psychology (6 credits)**

The rationale, scope, and history of cross-cultural psychology. Conceptual issues and research methods. Cultural relativism and the search for universals. The emic-etic distinction. Comparability of test scores across cultures. Non-Western approaches and contributions. Cross-cultural studies in personality, cognition, social behaviour, and psychopathology. Current status, applications, and ethical issues.

Prerequisites: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003)**

---

**PSYC0041. Consumer psychology (6 credits)**

This course examines the psychological processes underlying consumer buying behavior and the cultural and social factors mediating these processes. Consumer behavior will be studied from four psychological perspectives: motivational, information processing, attitude and attitude change, and decision-making. Students will learn to apply these perspectives to Hong Kong cases through tutorial exercises and group research projects. The course offers both theoretical and practical orientations to marketing and market analysis.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite : **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

**PSYC0043. Chinese psychology (6 credits)**

This course explores the psychology of the Chinese people from 'a native's point of view'. Psychological research findings using the Chinese as subjects will be reviewed and reinterpreted with culturally mediated meaning systems. Students are encouraged to adopt this perspective to discuss and to examine local issues and phenomena in class discussions and in their research projects. The course prepares students for a career in fields where interacting with local Chinese people is essential. Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisite : **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0044. Organizational psychology (6 credits)**

This course surveys the application of psychological principles and methods to the analysis of the complex relationships that exist between people and the social/cultural environment in their work organization. Topics include work motivation, job satisfaction, leadership, group relations, conflicts, organization design, and cross-cultural issues.

Assessment: 60% coursework, 40% examination.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0045. Personal and social competencies I (3 credits)**

Please refer to PSYC0025 for the course description. Students are required to take two modules other than those they have taken in PSYC0025, PSYC0026.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PSYC0046. Personal and social competencies II (3 credits)**

Please refer to PSYC0025 for the course description. Students are required to take two modules other than those they have taken in PSYC0025, PSYC0026 and PSYC0045.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PYSC0047. Survey research (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the technical and practical aspects of designing and conducting survey research. It is a course that would be appropriate for anyone intending to go into administrative, managerial, sales or professional careers after graduation, since surveys are such common ways of assessing consumer or client values or attitudes, market forces, social issues, or policy analysis.

Survey methods can include personal interviews, mail surveys or self-administered questionnaires, telephone interviews, or, more recently, on-line surveys. Examples of more specific topics covered would be questionnaire design, sampling methods, data collection, data analysis, compilation of survey reports, misuse of surveys, and bias (intentional and unintentional) in surveys. Students will be provided with hands-on experience in designing and conducting survey research in a computer assisted telephone interview laboratory and may have the opportunity of helping in the ongoing research programmes of HKU's Social Sciences Research Centre that typically attract media attention.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**PSYC0048. Graphonomics and graphonomic therapy (6 credits)**

This course examines the psychological dimensions underlying the behaviour of handwriting and drawing, including perception, cognition and motor theory. It provides an introduction to scientific analysis, in both theory and practice, linking therapeutic applications to expressive graphic activities.

Prerequisite : **PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003).**

---

**PSYC0050. Knowing and acting in everyday life (6 credits)**

This course investigates knowing and acting as an integral process by which we construct our experiences and interact with the world to maintain our well-being. Pragmatic approaches to knowledge ranging from Western empiricism to postmodern constructionism. Taoism and Buddhism are introduced. Students are encouraged to practice what they have learned by becoming more aware of their own acts of knowing and their consequences in everyday life. Projects and tutorial discussions are designed to aid this practice.

---

**PSYC0051. Perception (6 credits)**

To provide an introduction to sensation and perception, with an emphasis on the visual system as a model perceptual system. Specific topics will include the following examination of the functional properties of sensory systems (e.g., auditory system, colour vision, vestibular system, touch, and kinaesthesia); phenomenology of sensation and perception; psychophysical limits of perceptual systems; goals of sensory coding; structure and evolution of sensory systems. Psychophysical experiments will be conducted by students in laboratory sessions.

Prerequisite: **PSYC1001 or PSYC1002.**

---

**PSYC0052. Advanced social psychology (6 credits)**

This course provides an in-depth examination of two classic questions in personality and social psychology: What is social about social psychology? and Where is the person in personality psychology? By integrating research findings from experimental psychology, individual differences psychology and social psychology, this course seeks an integrative understanding of how an individual behaves in a social context. Topics include: person-situation interactions; interpersonal perception; stereotyping; intergroup dynamics; achievement motivation; psychology of the self; language use and interpersonal processes; cultural influences on cognition and behaviour.

Assessment: 70% coursework, 30% examination.

Prerequisites: **[PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003)], and (PSYC0019 or PSYC0020).**

---

**PSYC0053. Advanced research in industrial/organizational psychology (6 credits)**

This research-based course focuses on specific topics in industrial/organizational psychology that are pertinent to the latest economic development In Hong Kong and in the Greater China Region. Psychometric assessment of various job attitudes, aptitudes, and work-related personality will be one such topic. Students will develop their knowledge and hands-on skills in selected areas covered in the introductory courses of Industrial Psychology and Organizational Psychology.

Assessment: 75% coursework, 25% examination.

Prerequisites: **PSYC0033 or PSYC0044 or Head's permission.**

**PSYC0054. Human neuropsychology (6 credits)**

This course provides an overview of the neuro-anatomical and pathophysiological mechanisms of some common cognitive disorders neurological and/or neuropsychiatric in nature. Some examples of these disorders are brain tumors, cerebral vascular diseases, head injuries, dementia, and movement disorders. The neuropsychological and behavioral presentation of people suffering from these disorders will also be discussed.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**PSYC3001. Thesis in psychology (6 credits)**

(For students taking 48 credits or more senior-level courses in Psychology.)

Preferably an empirical investigation of a psychological problem chosen in consultation with a supervisor. The study should be complete in itself; for example it may consist of the replication of a study done elsewhere in order to throw further light on the discussion by bringing in material which is available because of the particular situation in Hong Kong; or a basic investigation of a social or experimental phenomenon which has attracted the attention of the investigator. The possibilities are legion. Some formal instruction in preparing a research proposal may be offered.

Prerequisites: [PSYC1001 or (PSYC1002 & PSYC1003)] and PSYC0001 and PSYC0007.

---

**SOCIAL WORK AND SOCIAL ADMINISTRATION****First-year Course****SOWK1001. Introduction to social administration (6 credits)**

This is a basic course in the understanding of social policy in the areas of human resources planning and education, land use and housing, ageing and social security, family and support services, etc.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**Second- or Third-year Courses****SOWK0054. Gender and society - a policy perspective (6 credits)**

Men and women's experience of the social world is significantly different but gender as a social construct is frequently overlooked both in academic discourse and in policy planning arenas. Gender effects are clear in health, education, employment, housing, social security provision, political activity and family (both in terms of private relations and family policy). This course will examine the different theories of gender discrimination, the consequent effects on social, economic and political life and attempt to answer the question 'what is to be done about it?'

---

**SOWK0012. Social welfare in China (6 credits)**

The course explores the philosophies, organization, techniques and development of social welfare provision in China. The work of service organizations such as the Civil Affairs Bureau, Street Offices, Trade Unions, Federation of Women, and the Communist Youth League will be studied. Issues concerning social security, youth policy, women's status and child care, the care of the elderly, the physically and mentally handicapped and professional training will be reviewed.

**SOWK0023. Social policy issues in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

This course will examine the issues of social policy in Hong Kong including privatization of welfare services, the impact of ideology of welfare on welfare development in Hong Kong, the issue of equity and equality in welfare provision, community care and service needs of the new arrivals from the mainland. Different theories of welfare will be discussed in relation to local welfare issues.

---

**SOWK0055. Management in human service organizations (6 credits)**

The aim of this course is to enable students to understand the recent business-oriented reforms in human service organizations. Human service organizations provide welfare, education and medical services to their users. The dynamics of quality improvements, strategic planning, monitoring and control, management information system, performance appraisal, supervision, stress management, teamwork, financial management and change are included.

---

**SOWK0014. Health administration (6 credits)**

The theme of this course will be the importance of taking into account the cultural, economic, social and physical environments when examining matters to do with the provision of health care. The aim will be to introduce students to the issues of planning and priorities, financing and resource allocation, management principles, arguments concerning quality versus quantity, community health and public education as they relate to health administration.

---

**Examinations**

Each of the above courses will be examined by one two-hour written examination, with assessment of coursework providing a total of 40%, and the two-hour paper a total of 60%.

---

**SOCIOLOGY**

The Sociology Department offers three courses to first-year BA students.

The courses are **Introduction to sociology**, **Discovering society** and **Introduction to anthropology**. The examination will consist of one two-hour paper.

In their second and third years, students from the Department of Philosophy, the American Studies Programme and the Linguistics and Philosophy Programme, may take up to the equivalent of eight 6-credit courses in Sociology. All other students may take up to the equivalent of five 6-credit courses in Sociology.

Students who intend to major in Sociology have to take eight 6-credit or more courses in Sociology of which **SOCI0001** and **SOCI0042** are compulsory.

Some of the Sociology courses are offered in the first half of the academic year, and others in the second half. The examination for each course will consist of one two-hour paper.

The final result for each course will be determined by a coursework assessment grade (25%) and an examination grade (75%), except where otherwise specified.

The courses offered for first-, second- and third-year students are listed below. Not all the courses listed will necessarily be offered every year.

## **First-year Courses**

### **SOCI1001. Introduction to sociology (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the nature of sociological enquiry and the basic concepts used in sociological analysis. After some reference to the influence of inheritance and environment on human social behaviour, the course will focus on key concepts used in the analysis of cultures, social structures, social processes and social change. The relationship between research, concepts and contemporary theory will be explored at an introductory level.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

### **SOCI1002. Discovering society (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the sociological way of thinking through reference mainly to Chinese societies such as Hong Kong, Mainland China, and overseas Chinese communities.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

### **SOCI1003. Introduction to anthropology (6 credits)**

This course will explore, through cross-cultural comparison, key social and cultural issues, such as marriage and the family, caste and class, ethnicity and identity, language and culture, state formation, economic values, gender and religion. The course will draw on studies of the peoples and cultures of Asia.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

## **Second- or Third-year Courses**

### **SOCI0001. A history of social theory (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the development of sociological thought in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

### **SOCI0002. Class, wealth and poverty: inequality and injustice in Hong Kong (6 credits)**

This course deals with the phenomenon of social inequality. It will cover topics such as theoretical explanations of this phenomenon; the methodological problems involved; different types of social stratification including caste, class, gender and ethnicity; the consequences of stratification on life chances and life styles; and social mobility. A comparative approach will be adopted.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.



**SOCI0003. Contemporary Chinese society (6 credits)**

This course attempts to analyse the social system in the People's Republic of China. Sociological explanations of the Chinese Communist Revolution, the process of social reintegration through ideology and organization, the socialist path to modernization, and continuities and discontinuities with social patterns in the past will be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0052** recommended.

---

**SOCI0005. Criminal behaviour (6 credits)**

This course focuses on the psychology of criminal conduct and social psychological explanations of individual and group offending. Topics include: psycho-social theories of criminal behaviour; mental disorder and crime; sexual and dangerous offenders; therapeutic communities; forensic psychology; serial offenders; and issues in ethics, treatment and intervention.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Pre-requisite: None, but **SOCI0057** recommended.

---

**SOCI0006. Critical issues in media studies (6 credits)**

This course addresses the issues related to the construction of reality by the media. In recent years, the media have been subject to various criticisms, including negative reporting, tabloid journalism, and ideological biases. These criticisms will be reviewed with particular focus on the extent to which the media can provide an objective and fair representation of reality.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0007. Cultural studies: themes and perspectives (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to theories, methods and studies of contemporary culture. Topics include: the problem of cultural creation under capitalism; the impact of the mass media on children; popular stars and their fans; women's magazines and the issue of sexism; the consumption behaviour of young people; modernism and post-modernism.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Pre-requisite: None, but **SOCI0019** and **SOCI0015** recommended.

---

**SOCI0008. Culture and society (6 credits)**

This course will introduce some of the central concerns of cultural and social anthropology (culture and human nature; the components of culture; the diversity of human cultures and societies; culture and social behaviour; social change) through a study of the theoretical concerns and empirical fieldwork of selected social and cultural anthropologists of the twentieth century.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**SOCI0009. Economic development and social change (6 credits)**

This course will be concerned with the dynamics and consequences of economic transformation in the developing world, with a particular focus on industrialization in East Asia. We will begin with a brief survey of some of the general theoretical frameworks that have been used to explain development in East Asia, as elsewhere, before moving on to examine particular societies and thematic issues in the light of these general frameworks. The societies to which most attention will be paid will be Japan, South Korea, Taiwan, Hong Kong, Singapore and Malaysia. The thematic issues to be addressed will include the transformative significance of historical conjunctures, free markets, foreign investment, economic cultures and state policy.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0010. Education and teaching (6 credits)**

Formal educational institutions in society will be examined, using the major concepts and theories of sociology. Emphasis is placed on the relationship between education and other important social institutions such as the family, the polity and the economy. The questions of equality of educational opportunity and the potential role of education in fostering social change will also be analysed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0011. Gender and crime (6 credits)**

Women who engage in illegal activities typically acquire a 'double deviant status'; they are perceived to be violating legal codes as well as gender proscriptions. Women offenders are not simply the shoplifter or the cocaine addict, but the 'fallen woman', the 'wicked temptress', and the 'immoral mother'. Such views about women offenders have been the basis for their differential treatment under the law and in punishment systems. The purpose of this course is to critically assess these assumptions and the gendered ways of social control policies.

The course is organised into three main sections. The first part of the course will examine the 'facts' on female offenders and theoretical explanations for female delinquency and crime. The next section focuses on women as crime victims, particularly in sexual assaults and domestic violence. The last section of the course traces and compares the development of social control policies (as expressed in the law, the criminal justice system, and corrections) aimed specifically at women offenders in several countries.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Pre-requisite: None, but **SOCI0057** recommended.

---

**SOCI0012. Gender and society (6 credits)**

This course will focus on the social construction of gender and the patterns of inequality that result from this process. Themes to be examined are: biology and destiny; social definitions of masculinity and femininity; sex role socialization; consequences of gender differentiation; theoretical perspectives. In addition, the contribution that social theory has to make to the question of the origins of sex inequalities will also be examined.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**SOCI0013. Gender in Chinese societies (6 credits)**

This course focuses on gender issues in Chinese societies: how women and men live out their lives in history and at present in China, Taiwan, Hong Kong and other overseas Chinese communities. It also compares gender issues in Chinese and Western societies, as well as in different Chinese communities. Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Pre-requisite: None, but **SOCI0012**, **SOCI0011**, **SOCI0052**, and **SOCI0003** recommended.

---

**SOCI0014. Globalization, work and industry (6 credits)**

This course provides a historical perspective on the transformations in the nature of work during the twentieth century through a focus on changes in corporate organization, technology and production systems, and managerial ideology and practices. It also deals with the impact on the nature and meaning of work of such contemporary developments as new production concepts, the flexible firm, the shift from industrial relations to human resource management and the globalization of production.

---

**SOCI0015. Hong Kong popular culture (6 credits)**

This course examines the major research landmarks in the study of popular culture in modern societies. The theoretical and methodological issues raised will serve as a guide for a series of workshops and field projects which investigate the history, nature and social significance of popular culture in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0043** recommended.

---

**SOCI0016. Hong Kong society (6 credits)**

An appraisal of the sociological research that has been done and the further research that needs to be done on Hong Kong society, covering such topics as: demographic structures and processes; kinship, marriage and family; the sociology of economic life; the polity; social stratification; systems of knowledge and belief; the mass media.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0017. Japanese economic institutions (6 credits)**

This course will focus on Japanese economic organizations and the ways they are influenced by Japanese culture and political and social structures. The topics covered include: development of the large corporation, management structures and styles, education and the employment system, the organization of work on the shop-floor, trade unions and industrial conflict, characteristics of small firms, inter-enterprise cooperation and competition, the role of industry associations, business and the state, Japanese enterprises abroad.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0018** recommended.

---

**SOCI0018. Japanese society (6 credits)**

This course focuses on some salient features of Japanese culture and society. The topics covered in the course are: the nature of Japanese society, culture and national character, family and kinship, social stratification, rural and urban communities, and social problems. Emphasis is also given to comparing Japan with other countries, especially China.

**SOCI0019. Life styles and modern culture (6 credits)**

This course explores the dynamics of modern society by looking at the manifold styles and life in modern culture. It examines questions on what underlies styles, how choices in life are made, and how cultural spaces are closed and created.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Pre-requisite: None, but **SOCI0007** and **SOCI0015** recommended.

---

**SOCI0020. Managing the environment: policies and issues (6 credits)**

This course is the study of the urban environment and the use and abuse of urban space. It deals with the social construction, the manipulation and negotiation of cities and urban space. The following areas will be examined: culture and housing; public and private space; urban environment and space in relation to ethnicity, class, gender and religion; environment and green politics; the pragmatic uses of space in relation to conservation, tourism and the heritage industry. The empirical focus is on Asian cities and on Hong Kong society.

---

**SOCI0021. Marriage and the family (6 credits)**

Marriage and the family are viewed comparatively, using historical and cross-cultural data. Included are the impact of industrialization and urbanization on family life, different forms of family organization and the societal conditions under which they occur, theories of mate selection, recent changes in dating and premarital sexual involvement, parenthood, and marital adjustment.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0023. Medical sociology (6 credits)**

This course will cover the main issues in the sociology of health and illness and health services provision. Topics covered may include: the social definitions and indicators of health and illness; social causes of disease and 'social hygiene'; development and current patterns of health care and their association with other socio-economic factors; relations between doctors, paramedics and patients; Western 'orthodox' and 'alternative', and 'Chinese traditional' forms of medical practice; the hospital as an institution and its links with other institutional forms in society; and sociological approaches to mental illness and drug abuse.

---

**SOCI0024. Modern social theory (6 credits)**

This course will be a critical exposition of many of the major trends in modern social theory, linking contemporary movements with older philosophical traditions in an attempt to trace continuities and ruptures in social thought. The course will be concerned with the contributions of behaviourists and social exchange theorists, the efforts of contemporary interactionists and French structuralists, and the post-structuralist enterprise.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0001** recommended.

---

**SOCI0025. Organizations and society (6 credits)**

This course will introduce contemporary perspectives for analyzing organizations including resource dependence, organizational ecology, and neo-institutionalism. It will consider how these perspectives can be used to study organizational development, behaviour and change. The positive and negative consequences for individuals and society of living in a world of organizations will also be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**SOCI0026. Overseas Chinese and global networks (6 credits)**

This course explores the experiences of overseas Chinese and the formation of Chinese communities in Southeast Asia, North America, and Europe. It examines how the Chinese are represented in their adopted countries, their adaptation process, their search for roots, and the formation of socio-cultural networks among the Chinese in a global context.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0027. Politics and society (6 credits)**

This course offers a sociological discussion of political power, political institutions, political processes, and political behaviour.

---

**SOCI0028. Population and society (6 credits)**

The quantity and quality of population have profound effects on a society. The number of people who are born, who die and who migrate within or out of a society are results of decisions and actions taken by individuals or families which are in turn affected by local and international events and policies. Changes in the number and in the characteristics of a population also have far-reaching social, economic and political consequences. On the macro-level, this course will examine the inter-relationship between social, economic and political processes, and the demographic processes of fertility, mortality and migration. On the micro-level, it will investigate the mutual effects between actions of individuals and families, and the larger social and demographic processes.

---

**SOCI0029. Programme planning and evaluation (6 credits)**

This is a course in applied sociology which examines both the general principles involved in developing social programmes - programmes in corrections, health, community action, mental health, job training, technical assistance, and so on - and the various ways of measuring the effectiveness of such programmes.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0042** recommended.

---

**SOCI0030. Quantitative sociological analysis (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to basic concepts and techniques in formulating and testing sociological hypotheses. Real data sets, with special reference to Hong Kong, will be analysed.

---

**SOCI0031. Race and ethnic relations (6 credits)**

This course investigates one of the great modern social problems: racial conflict. The course traces the history of the idea of race and analyses the reasons for its persistence in contemporary society. It assesses the crucial impact of race on such societies as South Africa, the UK and USA and asks whether Asian societies have comparable, if less publicised, problems.

**SOCI0032. Religion, rituals and myths (6 credits)**

This course will consider the central role of religion in the transition from traditional to industrial society and the problematic status of religion in the modern world. It will examine the contributions of classical social theorists, Marx, Weber and Durkheim, and also the more recent work on such issues as secularization, new religious movements, and alternatives to religion. It will ask: is religion in decline in the modern world?

---

**SOCI0034. Science, technology and society (6 credits)**

This course looks at science and technology in their wider social context. It aims to provide students with an understanding of how science and technology have been shaped by social forces, and how they have influenced social developments in developed and developing countries. To this end, it will study the rise of science and technology in China, Europe and the United States, and look at the role of the various scientific and technological professions in these countries. It will also introduce students to key issues in the history and sociology of science, and the sociology of knowledge more generally. It will examine sociological issues such as images of science and their social uses, and examine the use of science as a resource in public policy. In addition to these wider issues, the course will look at sociological studies of scientific work in the laboratory, scientific culture, and the concept of 'fraudulent' or 'bogus' knowledge.

---

**SOCI0035. Selected topics in social and cultural anthropology (6 credits)**

This course will examine the development of theory and empirical research in one or more selected topics in social and cultural anthropology. The topics to be covered will vary from year to year and will be announced before the beginning of the academic year.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0008** recommended.

---

**SOCI0036. Social anthropology of Hong Kong and Guangdong (6 credits)**

This course examines the transformation of culture in Hong Kong and compares it with developments in neighbouring Guangdong. It looks at changes in family organization, ritual and popular culture and problems of urban anthropology in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0037. Social change in Southeast Asia (6 credits)**

An introduction to the societies of Southeast Asia, and to the vast social changes occurring in the region today. The course begins with an elaboration of traditional cultures, followed by an examination of specific social realities, including changing caste/class roles; economic development and underdevelopment; the role of religious ideology as a political force; the situation of women.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0038. Social control (6 credits)**

A discussion of the problems of social order and control; basic techniques of social control; control in interpersonal relationship and small groups; the role of ideology and mass media in social control; the uses of conflict in establishing order.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0027** recommended.

**SOCI0039. Social movements (6 credits)**

This course examines the patterns and processes of different types of social and revolutionary movements.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0027** recommended.

---

**SOCI0041. Social problems (6 credits)**

This course is designed to introduce students to a number of contemporary social problems, social issues, and social concerns. Special emphasis is given to the nature of social problems in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0042. Social research methods (6 credits)**

The aims of this course are to introduce the basic principles and procedures which form the foundation of social research, to review the main types of research designs and methods of data collection used in social research, and to provide a set of criteria for analysing and evaluating the products of social research. The types of research covered will include participant observation, experimental design, survey methods and documentary analysis. Ethical and political issues in social research will also be discussed.

---

**SOCI0043. Sociology of contemporary culture (6 credits)**

This course aims to survey a number of theoretical and methodological approaches to the study of contemporary cultural life. Topics covered will include the production and consumption of mass communication products (TV, films, advertisements, fiction, pop music), spectator sports, leisure patterns and subcultural lifestyles.

---

**SOCI0044. Sociology of economic life (6 credits)**

This course deals with the relations between the economic and non-economic aspects of social life. Economic attitudes such as achievement motivations and work ethics, economic processes such as innovation and the establishment of business trust, economic roles such as entrepreneurs and managers, and economic organizations such as family firms and corporations will be examined in their sociocultural contexts.

---

**SOCI0045. Sociology of human psychology (6 credits)**

This course examines how individuals are connected to society from the perspectives of micro-sociology and sociological psychology. It looks at issues such as the ways in which individuals construct and manage a sense of self and identity in different settings and environments, how this identity is constantly reshaped during interaction with others, and the politics of social reality.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**SOCI0046. Sociology of law (6 credits)**

This course examines the interplay between law and society. It has a strong cross-cultural input, combining sociological, anthropological and historical materials. Students will be introduced to sociological theories of law, and to the theory and practice of law in socialist and liberal societies as well as pre-industrial and developing societies. The course therefore covers the customary, common law and codified legal systems and will examine the connection between legal institutions and social values.

---

**SOCI0047. Sociology of punishment (6 credits)**

This course deals with sociological and criminological theories of punishment. It will examine the historical and social context of punishment and look at the changing form of punishment in society. Students will be introduced to current debates on penal policy and corrections within the criminal justice system.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0057** recommended.

---

**SOCI0048. Sociology of sexuality (6 credits)**

This course examines how different cultures and sub-cultures construct their own categories of sexual desire, sexual identity, eroticism and sexualities. It covers theories of sexuality, issues in the cultural construction of sexuality, practices of sexual diversity and media representations of sex.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0049. The body and society (6 credits)**

This course examines the ways in which the human body embodies the key ideas and cultural assumptions in society. It also looks at how major political, social and personal problems are expressed through the body.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0050. The city and social policy (6 credits)**

An examination of the distinctive experiences, life-styles and problems of people who live in cities.

---

**SOCI0052. Traditional Chinese society (6 credits)**

This course deals with the sociological significance and methodology of the study of Chinese society. The theme is social integration - how social order was attained in the late imperial period, and how that order disintegrated after the Western impact. Important institutions such as family and kinship, social stratification and mobility, rural and urban organizations, central and local government, religion and other belief systems will be discussed.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0053. Youth and youth culture (6 credits)**

This course explores issues such as the discovery of childhood and adolescence, the development and expressions of youth culture in different societies including the United States, Britain, Japan, Canada, as well as youth cultures in Hong Kong.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.



**SOCI0054. Triads and organized crime (6 credits)**

In Hong Kong, Triads are known to have been long involved in the illegal businesses of drugs, gambling, prostitution, loan sharking, debt collecting and smuggling. Triads are also notorious for organized extortion from legitimate businesses, such as the entertainment industry, street hawking, wholesale markets and minibuses services, interior decoration business, the trading of properties, and the film industry. Since Hong Kong Triads are believed to be increasingly active in drug trafficking, human smuggling, and economic organized crime such as credit card fraud, counterfeiting, and money laundering, Western police foresee that Hong Kong Triads are replacing the Italian Mafia as the most powerful criminal organization in the world in the next century. Are these contentions correct? In order to understand what Triads exactly do in different kinds of organized crime, this course is specifically designed to analyse the role of Hong Kong Triads in legal, illegal, and international markets.

Assessment: coursework: 40%; examination: 60%.

---

**SOCI0055. A cultural study of tourisms and tourists (6 credits)**

The phenomenal growth of tourism in contemporary societies is of major social and cultural significance. This course introduces students to a cultural study of tourism viewed as a complex social phenomenon connected with social and cultural dynamics. Special attention will be given to Asian and Chinese experiences, not only as guest societies, but also as host societies.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0056. Criminal justice: policy and practice (6 credits)**

This course primarily aims to familiarize students with the idea that criminal justice can be viewed as a system consisting of interaction between three main components: police, courts, and corrections. Criminal investigation, arrest, prosecution, trial, conviction, sentence, incarceration, and community supervision will be examined. Attention will also be given to the formation and implementation of criminal justice policy. Students will be afforded the opportunity to explore a number of criminal justice systems found in other parts of the world but special attention will be devoted to the Hong Kong criminal justice system.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

Prerequisite: None, but **SOCI0057** recommended.

---

**SOCI0057. Crime and deviance I: an introduction to criminology (6 credits)**

The course introduces students to criminology as both an applied and academic discipline. The subject matter of criminology is diverse involving research drawn from many disciplines including medicine, law and sociology. The course begins by focusing on the state of crime in Hong Kong and introduces students to the operations, functions and nature of the various criminal justice agencies involved in the control of crime. The course also provides a general review of the major theoretical approaches and issues in understanding and measuring crime.

The course also provides an applied component which emphasizes the principles and practice of investigative interviewing - a core skill in the criminal justice system. Related topics covered to enhance the context of investigative interviewing include victimology, the investigative process and the role of forensic sciences (corroboration), and the legal rights of the suspect. Students will be required to visit courts, prisoner treatment programmes and participate in interviewing exercises and practicums.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

**SOCI0058. Crime and deviance II (6 credits)**

Building on the introductory course, the course aims to increase both the applied and theoretical aspects of understanding the causes of particular crimes and the remedies deployed to minimize their impact on individuals and society. Topics covered include violent and sex crimes, property crimes, illegal drug use, organized and elite crime, corruption and new crimes (e.g. environmental, consumer and computer crime). The second half of the course examines topics in the administration of justice by focusing on the adjudicative process and the role of punishment including: the general rules of evidence; the principles and law of sentencing; and the efficacy and ethics of offender treatment and punishment. Related topics may include issues such as: police and judicial discretion; the sociology of prisons; community and intermediate punishments.

Assessment: 50% coursework, 50% examination.

Prerequisite: **SOCI0057**.

---

**SOCI0060. Fraud, corruption and computer crime (6 credits)**

This course introduces students to the nature of crimes committed by white-collar people such as businessmen, government officials, politicians, technicians and professionals. It examines in depth three major types of white-collar crimes: fraud, corruption and computer crime.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0061. Life styles and religious practices (6 credits)**

In response to the highly stressful modern urban environment, there has been a movement towards alternative life style practices that are closely connected to various forms of religious practices. This course explores the reasons for the attractions of these religious practices, how they influence urban life styles, and why individuals and groups are attracted to the movements.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0062. Media development and cultural change in contemporary China (6 credits)**

Economic reform and the rapid improvement of living standards have transformed the social and cultural landscape of contemporary China dramatically. This course introduces students to change in these areas since 1979. It focuses in particular on the rapid development of mass media and the emergence of a consumer culture.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0063. Multicultural societies and modern identities (6 credits)**

This course explores how individuals and groups, through the use of traditional and modern cultural idioms, attempts to negotiate, adapt and create their own identities in modern multicultural societies. Topics to be covered may include multiculturalism and the modern nation state; local, ethnic and global identities; religion and violence; popular culture and modern values; food and identity and intercultural romances, marriage and family. Videos and films will be used as teaching materials.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

**SOCI0064. Globalization and the information society: myths, facts and emerging patterns (6 credits)**

This course will draw upon the most recent social research and undertake a critical examination of the ideas of globalization and information society. Three main areas will be covered: the nature of the knowledge-based informational economy, the ideas of risk, trust, and other economic-sociological aspects of e-business, and the transformations of work and non-work relationships as well as our experiences of time and space in the information age.

Assessment: 100% coursework.

---

**SOCI0065. Understanding media studies (6 credits)**

This course provides an analysis of the nature, development and impact of communication media in society. It introduces students to the approaches for understanding the role of mass media in society. It also examines a number of substantive issues concerning the actual functioning of modern communication media. Topics covered will include: changing technologies of communication, the ideology, ownership and control of modern media, ideals and practices of journalism, the uniqueness of different media forms like television, cinema, print and the internet, the political impact of media, the social impact of new communication technologies, the regulation of and access to broadcasting, and the globalization of communication media.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**SOCI0066. The Asian economic miracles and beyond (6 credits)**

This course will examine the Asian economic miracles from the economic, social, and political angles. First, it will analyze the making of the economic miracles by exploring the roles of government policies, family and related social institutions, as well as the global political-economic forces. The relationships between these factors and the 1997 financial crisis will also be examined. Second, the course will look at the impacts of economic development on alleviating income and other forms of social-cultural inequality. Finally, it will address the complex interactions between economic development and political democratization. The course will focus on Hong Kong, Singapore, South Korea, and Taiwan, but it will bring in the experiences of the Mainland China, Japan and other Southeast Asian countries where appropriate.

Assessment: 40% coursework, 60% examination.

---

**STATISTICS AND ACTUARIAL SCIENCE**

The Department of Statistics and Actuarial Science offers four basic courses for students who have not studied Statistics before. One, **STAT1003**, is for students with a good mathematics background. The others, **STAT1001**, **STAT1009** and **STAT0113**, are designed for students without a mathematics background. All four courses are concerned with the basic ideas, methods and applications of statistical analysis.

Students wishing to acquire a deeper knowledge of Statistics may take other courses subject to the limits imposed by Regulation A11(c) of the Arts Faculty.

The final grading in all courses will be assessed by a combination of examination and coursework. The proportion is 75:25, except when another ratio is specifically mentioned in the course description.

All courses are examined at the end of the semester in which they are taken. The examination for each course consists of one two-hour written paper, with the exception that course **STAT0801** has a three-hour examination.

---

### Introductory Courses

#### **STAT1001. Elementary statistical methods (6 credits)**

The discipline of statistics is concerned with situations involving uncertainty and variability. Variability greatly affects the interpretation of data. Thus, statistics forms an important descriptive and analytical tool for all investigative work. This elementary course, which is taught without any technical mathematics, presents many standard situations of data interpretation. The statistical tests for these situations are presented.

Eligibility: Not available to students with a pass in A-level Pure Mathematics. Students who have taken **MATH0802** or have AS-level Mathematics and Statistics are eligible for this course, but are advised that **STAT1003** may be a more suitable choice. Students taking or having taken **STAT1000** or **STAT1003** or **STAT1006** or **STAT1007** or **STAT1008** or **STAT1801** or **STAT0601** or **STAT0602** are not allowed to take this course.

---

#### **STAT1003. Introductory statistics (6 credits)**

The discipline of statistics is concerned with situations involving uncertainty and variability. The interpretation of data is greatly affected when variability plays a role, as it usually does. Thus statistics forms an important descriptive and analytical tool for all investigative work. Candidates with a mathematical background will find this course suitable, because the language of mathematics allows the subject of statistics to be presented with economy and clarity.

Prerequisite: Either A-level Pure Mathematics or AS-level Mathematics and Statistics or **MATH0801** or **MATH0802** or **MATH0901** or **MATH0902**. Students without these qualifications, but with Grade C or better in A-level Physics, are deemed to have sufficient mathematical training to enroll in this course. Students who intend to major in either of the 3 themes “Risk Management”, “Mathematical Statistics” and “Applied Statistics” should take **STAT1000** or **STAT1007** or **STAT0601** instead of this course. Students taking or having taken **STAT1000** or **STAT1001** or **STAT1006** or **STAT1007** or **STAT1008** or **STAT1801** or **STAT0601** or **STAT0602** are not allowed to take this course.

---

#### **STAT1009. Practical survey techniques (6 credits)**

We often try to infer the characteristics of a population by taking a sample from that population. This approach is usually forced upon us for economic, ethical or technological reasons. Against a background of practical situations, this course considers the basic principles, practice and design of sampling techniques to produce objective answers, free from bias. Emphasis will be on current and local problems.

Pre- or co-requisites: **STAT1000** or **STAT1001** or **STAT1003** or **STAT1006** or **STAT1007** or **STAT1008** or **STAT2001** or **STAT0601** or **STAT0602** or **STAT1801** or **ECON1003** or **ECOL2006**.

## Later Courses

### **STAT0104. The analysis of sample surveys (6 credits)**

We often try to infer the characteristics of a population by taking a sample from that population. This approach is usually forced upon us for economic, ethical or technological reasons. This course considers the basic theory for the design and analysis of surveys.

Prerequisite or co-requisite: **STAT1003** or **STAT1000** or **STAT1007** or **STAT1801** or **STAT0601** or **STAT1001** or **STAT1006** or **STAT1008** or **STAT2001** or **STAT0602** or **ECON1003** or **ECOL2006**.

---

### **STAT0110. Applied non-parametric methods (6 credits)**

Many statistical tests can be performed by simple calculations with ranks. These tests are especially important when distributional assumptions inherent in statistical models are unacceptable. Rank tests are a part of the field known as 'non-parametric statistics'. The course aims to explore this field. Contents include: Theory of ranks, order statistics. Hypothesis tests such as Mann-Whitney, Wilcoxon, Kolmogorov-Smirnov, von Mises, Kruskal-Wallis, Friedman, Spearman, Kendall and runs test. Modern themes in non-parametric statistics.

Pre- or co-requisite: **STAT0100** or **STAT2802** or **STAT0604** or **STAT0605**.

---

### **STAT0200. Intermediate statistics (6 credits)**

This course is a natural sequel to **STAT1003** taught at the same intermediate mathematical level. The course has two aims. Firstly, we aim to equip the student with the main concepts of statistical estimation and hypothesis testing, so that many other statistical ideas become accessible to the student. Secondly, we aim to provide exposure to statistics in a computer environment through the use of some statistical packages such as Minitab or JMP.

Prerequisite or co-requisite: **STAT1003** or **STAT1000** or **STAT1007** or **STAT0601**. Students taking or having taken **STAT0100** or **STAT0604** or **STAT0605** or **STAT2802** are not allowed to take this course.

---

### **STAT0203. Design and analysis of experiments (6 credits)**

This course is especially tailored for experimentalists and is taught with minimal mathematical prerequisites. Often much time and effort are wasted by investigators simply because they have not planned the design of their investigation in a way that stands up to criticisms of bias and invalidity. In this course basic principles of experimental design (such as replication, randomization, blocking, balancing, factorial completeness, and confounding) are explained in relation to specific problems.

Pre- or co-requisite: **STAT0401** or **STAT0603**. Students taking or having taken **STAT3104** are not allowed to take this course.

---

### **STAT0401. Computer-aided data analysis I (6 credits)**

In any study of the social sciences the investigator is faced with uncertainty and variability. Examples include the uncertain effects of a new fiscal measure and the variability in educational attainments of individuals. Measuring uncertainty, describing patterns of variability, and describing the inter-relationship between several variables are therefore essential aspects of social science investigations. These aspects require a good understanding of statistics. Against a background of specific social science problems, this computer-oriented but non-mathematical course develops the important concepts and methods of statistics. In particular, the student will learn data exploration, formulation of testable hypotheses, the evaluation of evidence and forecasting on the basis of past experience. Simple statistical software, JMP, will be used extensively. No prior knowledge of computers is assumed.

Prerequisite or co-requisite: **STAT1001** or **STAT1003** or **STAT1006** or **STAT1008** or **STAT2001** or **STAT0602** or **ECON1003** or **ECOL2006**. Students taking or having taken **STAT0603** are not allowed to take this course.

Assessment: Coursework 40% and examination 60%.

---

#### **STAT0402. Computer-aided data analysis II (6 credits)**

This computer-oriented course provides a natural sequel to **STAT0401**. The course deals with the situation where many variables of interest are measured on each individual. We deal with techniques which allow one to investigate relationships between these variables. The student will deal with real data sets and, using the software JMP, learn how to derive meaningful interpretations. Contents include: multiple regression, logistic regression, principal components analysis, discriminant analysis and cluster analysis.

Prerequisite or co-requisite: **STAT0401** or **STAT0603**.

Assessment: Coursework 40% and examination 60%.

---

#### **STAT0404. Demographic science (6 credits)**

Demography is concerned with the analysis of population structure, including the measurement of fertility, mortality, migration, manpower and education needs. Basic techniques such as life tables and population growth models will be illustrated in particular relation to the population and needs of Hong Kong.

Pre- or co-requisite: **STAT1001** or **STAT1003** or **STAT1006** or **STAT1008** or **STAT2001** or **STAT0602** or **ECON1003** or **ECOL2006**.

---

#### **STAT0801. Linear models and forecasting (6 credits)**

This course presents the theory and practice of linear models and investigates various forecasting procedures through time series analysis. Contents include: regression and multiple linear regression; time series models including autoregressive, moving average, autoregressive-moving average and integrated models; non-stationary and non-linear time series models.

Prerequisite or co-requisite: **STAT0100** or **STAT0605** or **STAT2802**. Students taking or having taken **STAT0102** or **STAT0604** or **STAT3101** are not allowed to take this course.